

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE WESTERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS
WACO DIVISION

ACQIS LLC

*

* March 18, 2024

VS.

*

* CIVIL ACTION NO. 6:20-CV-966

ASUSTEK COMPUTER, INC.

*

ASUS GLOBAL PTE. LTD.

*

BEFORE THE HONORABLE ALAN D ALBRIGHT
JURY TRIAL PROCEEDINGS
Volume 1 of 5

APPEARANCES:

For the Plaintiff: Case L. Collard, Esq.
Gregory S. Tamkin, Esq.
Dorsey & Whitney LLP
1400 Wewatta Street, Suite 400
Denver, CO 80202

Madeline Hepler, Esq.
Dorsey & Whitney LLP
701 5th Ave, Suite 6100
Seattle, WA 98104

Elliot J. Hales, Esq.
Dorsey & Whitney LLP
111 S. Main Street, Suite 2100
Salt Lake City, UT 84111

Paige Arnette Amstutz, Esq.
Scott, Douglass & McConnico, LLP
303 Colorado Street, Suite 2400
Austin, TX 78701

For the Defendants: Eric A Buresh, Esq.
Mark C. Lang, Esq.
Michelle L. Marriott, Esq.
Erise IP, PA
7015 College Boulevard
Overland Park, KS 66211

James Travis Underwood, Esq.
Gillam & Smith
102 N. College, Suite 800
Tyler, TX 75702

1 Court Reporter: Kristie M. Davis, CRR, RMR
2 PO Box 20994
3 Waco, Texas 76702-0994
4 (254) 340-6114

5 Proceedings recorded by mechanical stenography,
6 transcript produced by computer-aided transcription.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

08:50 1 (Hearing begins.)

08:50 2 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

08:50 3 THE COURT: Good morning, everyone. You
08:50 4 may be seated.

08:50 5 I understand we have a couple of issues
08:50 6 to take up. Happy to do it.

08:50 7 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.
08:50 8 Case Collard for ACQIS. And we sent a joint e-mail in
08:50 9 to Mr. Shultz.

08:50 10 The first issue is one I think -- I hope
08:50 11 we can dispose of pretty quickly. And that would be,
08:51 12 there is disagreement about the claim construction
08:51 13 document that will go in the juror notebook and that
08:51 14 also we'll use in our slides.

08:51 15 I don't think -- and I'm certainly happy
08:51 16 to let ASUSTeK and ASGL speak for themselves. But I
08:51 17 think the issue is they just want to preserve their
08:51 18 objection to your construction, but they recognize that
08:51 19 the construction applies in this case.

08:51 20 And so I'll let Ms. Marriott speak on
08:51 21 that.

08:51 22 MS. MARRIOTT: Your Honor, may I approach
08:51 23 the...

08:51 24 THE COURT: Sure.

08:51 25 MS. MARRIOTT: Your Honor, the question

08:51 1 here is the "PCI bus transaction" term that's been
08:51 2 construed by the Court.

08:51 3 The Court in construing that term said:
08:51 4 I'm going to adopt the Federal Circuit's construction
08:51 5 of a transaction in accordance with the industry
08:51 6 standard PCI local bus specification for communication
08:51 7 with interconnected peripheral component.

08:51 8 That's the construction that defendants
08:52 9 believe should go in the jury notebook. That is the
08:52 10 Federal Circuit's construction. And we believe that
08:52 11 that is the construction that the Court adopted.

08:52 12 The issue comes with the next sentence
08:52 13 from the claim construction transcript where Your Honor
08:52 14 said: But I'm also putting on the record, and we'll
08:52 15 get an order out as quickly as possible, we agree with
08:52 16 plaintiff that "in accordance with" includes backwards
08:52 17 compatibility and that adding backwards compatibility
08:52 18 does not expand the scope.

08:52 19 So the question is whether that last part
08:52 20 of Your Honor's statement is part of the construction
08:52 21 or not. And defendants' position is that's not in the
08:52 22 Federal Circuit's construction and should not be
08:52 23 submitted to the jury.

08:52 24 THE COURT: Could I see what it is that
08:52 25 plaintiff wants to submit?

08:52 1 MS. MARRIOTT: Absolutely, Your Honor.
08:52 2 Can I pass this up? This is from our joint jury
08:52 3 instruction, so it has -- defendants blue and ACQIS is
08:52 4 red.

08:53 5 THE COURT: And I'll hear from the
08:54 6 plaintiff.

08:54 7 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, you -- I think
08:54 8 Ms. Marriott admits and the defendants admit the key
08:54 9 point, which is your construction said that in
08:54 10 accordance with includes backwards compatibility. That
08:54 11 was an additional part of your construction.

08:54 12 You've construed the same term in the
08:54 13 same patents and issued an order in the Sony case in
08:54 14 which the -- this same counsel, that also says
08:54 15 backwards compatible.

08:54 16 There's no dispute that backwards
08:54 17 compatible is a part of the construction the jury
08:54 18 should be instructed on. The idea to keep it out now
08:54 19 would really just be going back and changing your
08:54 20 construction.

08:55 21 THE COURT: Okay. So for the record, I'm
08:55 22 going to go with what the plaintiff is suggesting.

08:55 23 What is the next issue?

08:55 24 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

08:55 25 The next issue is an objection to -- the

08:55 1 content is really the same on these issues, Your Honor.
08:55 2 It's our discussion, our use, and our admission of
08:55 3 licenses that the defendants claim are not comparable.

08:55 4 The issue is that ACQIS has about 21
08:55 5 licenses that to -- that include the patents-in-suit.
08:55 6 The way the evidence is likely to come in is that I'm
08:55 7 going to talk with Dr. Chu, who's the CEO of ACQIS, and
08:55 8 talk about his overall approach to licensing and
08:55 9 negotiation, what kind of -- you know, royalty versus
08:55 10 lump sum, whether there's additional compensation
08:56 11 considered, and how that affects the amounts, all of
08:56 12 those issues.

08:56 13 Our expert, that's exactly the sort of
08:56 14 thing he talks about in his expert report, what is
08:56 15 ACQIS' approach to negotiation. He then says: I
08:56 16 looked at all -- and analyzed all 21 of those licenses.
08:56 17 And here are the, I think, 13 or so that I found most
08:56 18 comparable for purposes of calculating my royalty rate.

08:56 19 What defendants want is that the -- they
08:56 20 want to take the fact or the moment where the expert
08:56 21 says, well, I found these are comparable for purposes
08:56 22 of calculating my royalty rate, and then say, now those
08:56 23 other licenses are excluded from the case as if they
08:56 24 didn't happen.

08:56 25 The plaintiff and CEO who signed those

08:56 1 licenses --

08:56 2 THE COURT: Are they in your expert's
08:56 3 report?

08:56 4 MR. COLLARD: Yes.

08:56 5 THE COURT: I'm not sure what the
08:56 6 objection is.

08:56 7 MS. MARRIOTT: Your Honor, the licenses
08:56 8 that -- so the context is there's a summary chart that
08:57 9 lists a lot of licenses with a lot of amounts.

08:57 10 All of the licenses that we're objecting
08:57 11 to are ones that our expert has found to be
08:57 12 noncomparable and the plaintiff's expert has found to
08:57 13 be noncomparable.

08:57 14 So the issue here is, one, they're not
08:57 15 relevant to any issue in this case. They're not being
08:57 16 used by either expert. And, two, it's prejudicial.

08:57 17 THE COURT: Well, it's not prejudicial.
08:57 18 But if -- your expert's welcome to explain that, and
08:57 19 this is just argument.

08:57 20 I'm going to overrule the objection.

08:57 21 What do we have next?

08:57 22 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I think to be
08:57 23 clear on the chart is to --

08:57 24 THE COURT: Now, if the plaintiff says
08:57 25 something in opening that's inconsistent with what the

08:57 1 evidence shows, you can point that out as well.

08:57 2 I mean, whatever -- just so you know,
08:57 3 this past week...

08:57 4 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor --

08:57 5 THE COURT: I cut something out last week
08:57 6 in a trial in a motion in limine, and the person who'd
08:57 7 asked me to keep it out brought it up during opening
08:58 8 and then was unaware that opening counted in terms of
08:58 9 what's said to the jury and that it -- you could open
08:58 10 the door during openings.

08:58 11 So that -- just in case you're wondering,
08:58 12 what you say in opening, while it's only argument, the
08:58 13 other side still gets to use it. So...

08:58 14 MR. COLLARD: Understood, Your Honor. I
08:58 15 appreciate the reminder.

08:58 16 THE COURT: I'm having such a hard time
08:58 17 with your counsel sitting at the plaintiff's table that
08:58 18 I may be confused occasionally seeing her over at
08:58 19 counsel -- on the plaintiff's side. It's just -- I'm
08:58 20 having a little bit of PTSD over that, but I guess
08:58 21 I'll...

08:58 22 And not that -- you're -- the defense
08:58 23 local counsel isn't usually on the other side as well.
08:58 24 So maybe -- I'll just have to do my best to remember
08:58 25 which sides they're representing when they're up here.

08:58 1 MR. COLLARD: We don't have a little
08:58 2 sign, I guess.

08:58 3 Your Honor, I think it is fair to take up
08:59 4 the tail end of this dispute, then, which is actually
08:59 5 over this Rule 1006 summary exhibit --

08:59 6 THE COURT: Okay.

08:59 7 MR. COLLARD: -- which was objected to by
08:59 8 plaintiffs.

08:59 9 I don't know if you have any -- in light
08:59 10 of this ruling, do you have remaining objections to the
08:59 11 summary exhibit?

08:59 12 MS. MARRIOTT: Just a few.

08:59 13 Your Honor, on the summary, so 1006
08:59 14 allows for a summary of the evidence. This has a few
08:59 15 issues here.

08:59 16 One is it has a column for effective
08:59 17 royalty rate, which is really just calculations their
08:59 18 expert is doing, not necessarily terms of the licenses
08:59 19 themselves.

08:59 20 So we would ask that that be not
08:59 21 submitted to the jury because that's really -- an
08:59 22 effective royalty rate is by definition expert
08:59 23 calculations.

08:59 24 THE COURT: That's overruled.

08:59 25 What else do you have?

08:59 1 MS. MARRIOTT: The last column here is
08:59 2 additional compensation to ACQIS, and it has things
08:59 3 like 5 percent of future sales, stop making infringing
08:59 4 product. I don't know that that's necessarily
08:59 5 compensation to ACQIS, so I would just say additional
09:00 6 terms.

09:00 7 THE COURT: That's overruled.
09:00 8 Anything else?

09:00 9 MS. MARRIOTT: Thank you, Your Honor.
09:00 10 Nothing else.

09:00 11 THE COURT: Yes, sir.

09:00 12 MR. COLLARD: The last issue, Your Honor,
09:00 13 is on Exhibit P-50. It's the May 15, 2018 letter to
09:00 14 ASUS from ACQIS.

09:00 15 We discussed this at the motion in limine
09:00 16 hearing. They have asked for additional redactions to
09:00 17 that letter that refer to a prior litigation against
09:00 18 IBM in the Eastern District of Texas.

09:00 19 In short, our position is we asked ASUS
09:00 20 if they would -- they would agree that the letter is
09:00 21 adequate for purposes of notice, and then they can
09:00 22 argue about whether they received it or not, notice of
09:00 23 infringement.

09:00 24 They won't agree to that. And so in
09:00 25 light of that, we really need to have the full

09:00 1 discussion. Because the way -- Dr. Chu wrote a letter
09:00 2 that they have characterized as essentially too soft to
09:01 3 say it doesn't really allege infringement.

09:01 4 But having a paragraph saying, I'm -- you
09:01 5 know, essentially, I'm so serious about this that I
09:01 6 litigated through trial with another defendant on other
09:01 7 of my patents is certainly relevant to the strength of
09:01 8 the notice letter.

09:01 9 THE COURT: A response?

09:01 10 MR. UNDERWOOD: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:01 11 And I've got a copy of the letter if that
09:01 12 would be helpful for the Court.

09:01 13 THE COURT: Sure.

09:01 14 MR. UNDERWOOD: Travis Underwood on
09:01 15 behalf of the defendants.

09:01 16 So as Mr. Collard pointed out, there's
09:01 17 actually three separate sections of this letter that
09:01 18 we're asking to be redacted. The first is the second
09:01 19 to last paragraph, and I put some annotations on the
09:01 20 exhibit so the Court can follow.

09:01 21 This is the IBM litigation in the Eastern
09:01 22 District of Texas. It's different patents. It's
09:02 23 different products.

09:02 24 THE COURT: I'm going to exclude that
09:02 25 paragraph.

09:02 1 MR. UNDERWOOD: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:02 2 The next paragraph we're asking to be
09:02 3 redacted is the last paragraph.

09:02 4 THE COURT: Well, let me start over. I'm
09:02 5 excluding it for now. I'm going to listen to the
09:02 6 testimony. If the plaintiff at some point wants to
09:02 7 argue based on -- I don't know how you're going to
09:02 8 cross the -- their witness. I'll see how you cross
09:02 9 them to determine.

09:02 10 Right now I don't think it's necessary to
09:02 11 have the fact that they were successful against IBM in,
09:02 12 but I'll hear what -- how you cross their witnesses to
09:02 13 determine whether or not that becomes admissible.

09:02 14 MR. UNDERWOOD: Thank you, Your Honor.
09:02 15 That's all we're asking for.

09:02 16 And then the -- with respect to that
09:02 17 paragraph, the last paragraph addresses a bunch of
09:02 18 IPRs. Under the Court's standard motion in limine, we
09:02 19 don't think IPR practice should come into the case.
09:02 20 It's a sideshow.

09:03 21 And I'll also point out for the record
09:03 22 the IPRs that are referenced in this paragraph, they
09:03 23 also are on different patents, Your Honor.

09:03 24 THE COURT: Okay. I'm going to keep that
09:03 25 out.

09:03 1 MR. UNDERWOOD: And then finally, if we
09:03 2 turn to the last page, Your Honor, on the very top
09:03 3 paragraph, the final line says, and I quote: HP had
09:03 4 invested in our company and is a shareholder.

09:03 5 And we think, Your Honor, what the
09:03 6 plaintiffs are intending to do is to use this to sort
09:03 7 of bolster their technology and their credibility. The
09:03 8 problem with that, Your Honor, is that one month ago --

09:03 9 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, we can agree to
09:03 10 redact that line if we're redacting the others.

09:03 11 THE COURT: Okay.

09:03 12 MR. UNDERWOOD: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:03 13 THE COURT: Anything else we need to take
09:03 14 up?

09:03 15 MR. UNDERWOOD: Not from defendants, Your
09:03 16 Honor.

09:03 17 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor -- sorry. Maybe
09:03 18 you have something else.

09:03 19 MR. UNDERWOOD: Your Honor, may I ask
09:03 20 Mr. Collard for a clarification on something?

09:03 21 (Conference between counsel.)

09:04 22 MR. UNDERWOOD: Your Honor, may I
09:04 23 approach with the exhibit at issue? And I apologize.
09:04 24 There is a related issue that I was not perceiving.

09:04 25 THE COURT: Okay.

09:04 1 MR. UNDERWOOD: So on this exhibit, Your
09:04 2 Honor, the Court just heard argument about, you know,
09:04 3 whether or not experts discuss comparability, things of
09:04 4 that nature, but there are three licensees and licenses
09:04 5 listed on this exhibit.

09:04 6 For the record, they're the HP license,
09:04 7 the Oracle license, and the IBM license that are
09:05 8 problematic and have their own baggage for other
09:05 9 reasons, and they are all structured similarly.

09:05 10 As we were just talking about in the
09:05 11 letter, the plaintiff was telling the world that HP had
09:05 12 invested in the company. And that's the way that these
09:05 13 were structured. They were structured as investments
09:05 14 rather than licenses.

09:05 15 And the issue, Your Honor, is that one
09:05 16 month ago, the United States Tax Court issued a
09:05 17 decision. And in this decision, these three
09:05 18 arrangements were at issue: HP, Oracle, and IBM.

09:05 19 And what that decision did is it upheld
09:05 20 income tax penalties. I'm not going to go through the
09:05 21 whole thing because it's lengthy, but this is in sum
09:05 22 what the United States Tax Court had to say about these
09:05 23 agreements: The transaction before us lacks both
09:05 24 business purpose and economic substance and is a sham.
09:05 25 Accordingly, the transaction will be disregarded.

09:06 1 And so, Your Honor, we've got a court
09:06 2 decision, the United States Tax Court declaring that
09:06 3 these transactions are a sham. And so we think on the
09:06 4 one hand, if the plaintiff wants to get into these and
09:06 5 use them as evidence of licensing arrangements, that
09:06 6 the whole story should come in. And we think that
09:06 7 evidence should come in as well, what the tax court has
09:06 8 said about these arrangements.

09:06 9 Now, I think it would be much easier to
09:06 10 keep all of it out altogether because I think it's just
09:06 11 going to be a sideshow, and we don't need this coming
09:06 12 into a patent case. But if they are going to use these
09:06 13 licenses with the jury, we think the tax court decision
09:06 14 necessarily is implicated, Your Honor.

09:06 15 THE COURT: Response?

09:06 16 MR. COLLARD: Right. Your Honor, I'm
09:06 17 going to come up to the lectern.

09:06 18 Your Honor, there's a little bit of --
09:06 19 lack of full disclosure I think on what that really
09:06 20 said and what is going on in the tax court.

09:07 21 First of all, that decision's not final.
09:07 22 There's ongoing litigation in the tax court. There's
09:07 23 no final ruling. ACQIS has filed additional motions
09:07 24 just last week on those issues.

09:07 25 Second of all, we're not going to talk

09:07 1 about the structure of the licenses, especially now
09:07 2 that we are able to admit the summary exhibit,
09:07 3 Exhibit 920, because there's no reason to.

09:07 4 The -- there is no dispute, and ASUS
09:07 5 knows this, that HP paid [REDACTED], Oracle paid [REDACTED]
09:07 6 [REDACTED] and IBM paid [REDACTED] And that's pretty
09:07 7 much the extent of the testimony we're going to go
09:07 8 into.

09:07 9 What they're talking about is what bucket
09:07 10 and how it got tax -- what the tax treatment was on the
09:07 11 back end. We're not going to talk about the tax
09:07 12 treatment of any of this revenue.

09:07 13 THE COURT: I'm going to keep the tax
09:07 14 court decision out.

09:07 15 MR. COLLARD: Thank you.

09:07 16 THE COURT: Anything else we need to take
09:07 17 up?

09:08 18 MR. UNDERWOOD: Nothing from defendants,
09:08 19 Your Honor.

09:08 20 THE COURT: Okay. I'll go back and get
09:08 21 the jury organized, and we'll come back out.

09:08 22 MR. COLLARD: We'd like to invoke the
09:08 23 rule, Your Honor.

24 THE COURT: Thank you.

09:08 25 MR. COLLARD: And there's one wrinkle in

09:08 1 that we think that Ajay Bhatt, one of the witnesses
09:08 2 from ASUS, should be subject to the rule in light of
09:08 3 your prior motion in limine clarification that he can
09:08 4 only testify about things he has factual information
09:08 5 on.

09:08 6 THE COURT: I have no idea who that is.
09:08 7 Who is defendants' corporate representative?

09:08 8 MR. BURESH: This is Barbara Chen and
09:08 9 Emma Ou from the two defendants.

09:08 10 THE COURT: Okay. So why would --
09:08 11 whoever the other gentleman is, why would he not be
09:08 12 subject to the rule?

09:08 13 MR. BURESH: He submitted an expert
09:08 14 report, Your Honor. He'll be testifying about a
09:08 15 substantial amount of technical information, but he
09:08 16 won't be offering opinions in this case. So --

09:08 17 THE COURT: If he's not offering
09:08 18 opinions, then he wouldn't get to rely on what he heard
09:08 19 in court and, therefore, he doesn't need to hear it.
09:09 20 So I'm going to exclude him under the rule.

09:09 21 MR. BURESH: That's fine, Your Honor.
09:09 22 Thank you.

09:09 23 THE COURT: Anything else?

09:09 24 MR. COLLARD: No, Your Honor. Thank you.

09:09 25 THE COURT: Okay.

09:09 1 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

09:09 2 (Recess taken.)

09:14 3 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

09:14 4 THE COURT: Please remain standing for

09:15 5 the jury.

09:15 6 (Jury entered the courtroom.)

09:15 7 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be

8 seated.

09:15 9 Jen, would you call the case, please?

09:15 10 DEPUTY CLERK: A civil action in Case

09:15 11 6:20-CV-966, ACQIS LLC versus ASUSTeK Computer,

09:15 12 Incorporated, et al. Case called for a jury trial

09:15 13 proceeding.

09:15 14 THE COURT: Counsel, if you would please

09:15 15 announce -- tell me who is at your counsel table and

09:15 16 introduce yourselves again to the jury, please.

09:16 17 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:16 18 My name is Case Collard. I'm with the

09:16 19 law firm Dorsey & Whitney, and this is Dr. Bill Chu,

09:16 20 the CEO of ACQIS. And we represent ACQIS. And also

09:16 21 with me at counsel table is Paige Amstutz. She's from

09:16 22 the Austin law firm Scott, Douglass & McConnico.

09:16 23 Good morning.

09:16 24 MR. BURESH: Good morning, ladies and

09:16 25 gentlemen. My name is Eric Buresh, and I represent the

09:16 1 defendants in this case, ASUSTeK and ASGL, which you
09:16 2 all heard about on Thursday morning.

09:16 3 With me at counsel table is Ms. Kathleen
09:16 4 Fitterling who will be working with me on this case.
09:16 5 And our corporate representatives, this is Ms. Barbara
09:16 6 Chen from ASUSTeK and Ms. Emma Ou from ASGL.

09:16 7 Thank you.

09:16 8 THE COURT: Thank you all.

09:16 9 Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, let me
09:16 10 introduce myself to you now on the record. My name is
09:16 11 Alan Albright. I'm the United States district judge
09:16 12 for the Waco Division of the Western District of Texas.

09:17 13 Last week I was in Del Rio helping out,
09:17 14 and I'm very happy to be home and back with you all
09:17 15 again.

09:17 16 You're about to hear a patent trial. I
09:17 17 don't know what your level of enthusiasm was when you
09:17 18 got invited to come here and serve on the jury or if it
09:17 19 went up or down when you actually got selected to serve
09:17 20 on the jury, but I can assure you after having over --
09:17 21 a lot of trials now, I talk to juries in the end and
09:17 22 they're always very grateful that they got to serve. I
09:17 23 think you're actually going to find that this is a very
09:17 24 rewarding experience.

09:17 25 You're also very lucky to have very

09:17 1 talented lawyers who are going to be doing the trial
09:17 2 this week. That isn't always true. But I know these
09:17 3 lawyers pretty well, and you have great good fortune
09:17 4 this week.

09:17 5 So having said that, do you intend to do
09:17 6 your opening argument at the beginning as well?

09:17 7 MR. BURESH: Yes. We do, Your Honor.
09:18 8 Thank you.

09:18 9 THE COURT: Counsel, if you'd like to
09:18 10 give the opening argument for the plaintiff.

09:18 11 A very short reminder. Ladies and
09:18 12 gentlemen of the jury, this is just argument from
09:18 13 counsel. They intend probably to give you a blueprint
09:18 14 of where they anticipate the evidence will go. The
09:18 15 evidence will not begin until they call their first
09:18 16 witness. That doesn't mean that the opening arguments
09:18 17 aren't important. They are. But they are just their
09:18 18 arguments of counsel.

09:18 19 Yes, sir. Would you like any warning?

09:18 20 MR. COLLARD: Yes, Your Honor. A
09:18 21 five-minute warning and maybe a one-minute when I'm
09:18 22 really there would be fantastic.

09:18 23 Thank you, sir.

09:18 24 THE COURT: Sure.

09:18 25 OPENING STATEMENT ON BEHALF OF THE PLAINTIFF

09:18 1 MR. COLLARD: This case is about holding
09:18 2 ASUSTeK and ASGL accountable for their unauthorized use
09:18 3 of Dr. Bill Chu's and ACQIS' intellectual property.
09:18 4 The evidence will show that Dr. Bill Chu invented and
09:19 5 patented a new computer bus.

09:19 6 Now, I promise I'm going to come back to
09:19 7 what a computer bus is. But this computer bus was so
09:19 8 ahead of its time that almost the entire computer
09:19 9 industry got on board and took a license and paid to
09:19 10 use Dr. Chu's patented technology. But not ASUS.

09:19 11 And even though over 20 computer
09:19 12 companies have taken licenses to pay for the ACQIS
09:19 13 patents, ASUS still refuses.

09:19 14 Now, ASUS has many subsidiaries, and they
09:19 15 will try to hide behind its corporate structure. But
09:19 16 make no mistake, ASUSTeK is in charge and needs to pay
09:19 17 for its use of ACQIS' property.

09:19 18 Now, we got to talk just a little bit
09:20 19 during jury selection last week. And my name is Case
09:20 20 Collard --

09:20 21 I can start anyway.

09:20 22 My name is Case Collard, as I said, and
09:20 23 I'm really honored to be here with you. I know Judge
09:20 24 Albright has done a lot of these trials, but we don't
09:20 25 get to do them all that often and it's really exciting

09:20 1 for us to be here and having this trial with you. This
09:20 2 isn't something we get to do every week.

09:20 3 And I'm honored to be here representing
09:20 4 ACQIS and Bill Chu.

09:20 5 As the Judge said, this is the opening
09:20 6 statement of ACQIS, and my job here is really to give
09:20 7 you a roadmap, to tell you the kind of evidence that we
09:20 8 want to bring in to prove our case over the rest of
09:20 9 this week.

09:20 10 And we'll show what I already talked
09:20 11 about, that the defendants infringed Dr. Bill Chu's
09:21 12 patents and that their infringement was willful. We'll
09:21 13 talk about that a little more too. And that because of
09:21 14 that, they owe him damages.

09:21 15 But first, I want to thank you again. I
09:21 16 thanked you last week, but I want to thank you for your
09:21 17 service. You're taking time out of your whole week.
09:21 18 And in every case I've been a part of, the jury really
09:21 19 takes this so seriously. We really appreciate that.
09:21 20 The lawyers, the clients appreciate that.

09:21 21 This is a really unique part of our
09:21 22 system. The idea that people from our community decide
09:21 23 disputes is a really unique and American
09:21 24 characteristic. And it's in the Bill of Rights. It's
09:21 25 Amendment No. 7, the right to a jury trial.

09:21 1 So even for high-tech patent cases, this
09:21 2 system works. And it's uniquely American.

09:21 3 So we'll aim to be as efficient as we can
09:21 4 giving you the information that you need and hopefully
09:21 5 making everything as clear as possible. That's our
09:22 6 job. And we're going to try and do our job.

09:22 7 We have some great teachers who will be
09:22 8 witnesses, including Dr. Chu, who you'll meet today.
09:22 9 And I'm excited for you to talk with him -- or hear
09:22 10 from him.

09:22 11 I know you watched the video about
09:22 12 patents that we talked about, the 17 minutes. I
09:22 13 watched it over the weekend again, and it does a good
09:22 14 job. But I want to talk just a little more about
09:22 15 patents to kind of set the stage.

09:22 16 Now, this was in the video, this
09:22 17 discussing how patents are property, intellectual
09:22 18 property. Not real estate, but there are some
09:22 19 parallels. And so we cleaned that graphic up a bit.

09:22 20 And there are fences or boundaries to
09:22 21 property. And in a patent, there are boundaries too.
09:22 22 And they're called the claims, and they describe what
09:22 23 was invented. And that's kind of like the description
09:22 24 of the property in a deed.

09:22 25 Now, Texans know about property. I told

09:22 1 you I was a Kansan. Kansans know about it too. One of
09:22 2 the things that we know about property is that there
09:23 3 are rules. You have to ask permission to enter
09:23 4 someone's property. Maybe you have to use a gate.

09:23 5 And we're going to prove that the ASUS
09:23 6 defendants used Dr. Chu's property without permission.
09:23 7 And the patents in this company, now they're owned by
09:23 8 Dr. Chu's company. It's called ACQIS. And ACQIS was
09:23 9 founded by Dr. Chu.

09:23 10 Now, patents are a unique type of
09:23 11 property. They're intellectual property. They're not
09:23 12 real estate. And as you saw in the video, they're
09:23 13 unique in one way because they're protected in the
09:23 14 Constitution.

09:23 15 Article I, Section 8, I think it's Clause
09:23 16 8, but: The Congress shall have the power to promote
09:23 17 the progress and science of the useful arts by securing
09:23 18 for limited times to authors and inventors the
09:23 19 exclusive right to their respective writings and
09:23 20 discoveries.

09:23 21 Dr. Chu is the inventor. He and ACQIS
09:24 22 have the exclusive right to the patents. And I'm so
09:24 23 excited, as I said, to introduce you to Dr. Chu. I've
09:24 24 known him for 15 years, and his story is uniquely
09:24 25 American.

09:24 1 He was born in China. His family fled
09:24 2 the communist takeover of China and went to Hong Kong.
09:24 3 They lived in Hong Kong, and he went to -- grew up
09:24 4 there. He came to the United States to go to college
09:24 5 at one of our top universities, the University of
09:24 6 California at Berkeley. He received a Ph.D. in
09:24 7 electrical engineering at the young age of 25.

09:24 8 He spent his career living and working in
09:24 9 Silicon Valley improving computers throughout the 1980s
09:24 10 and 1990s, helping lay the foundation for the computers
09:24 11 that we use today, the tiny computers that we often
09:24 12 have in our pockets or -- I don't know if you guys got
09:24 13 to bring them in -- or out in your cars.

09:24 14 And after decades in the computing
09:24 15 business, he was building companies. He was overseeing
09:25 16 giant teams of engineers. In the late 1990s, Dr. Chu
09:25 17 made a breakthrough. He'd just left his position at a
09:25 18 company called Cirrus Logic, and he had an idea for a
09:25 19 new product and a new company.

09:25 20 And I'm going to talk about a new product
09:25 21 and a new company, but before I do, I got to take you
09:25 22 back to 1998. Because it's important not to think
09:25 23 about computers as they are now in 2024 but about how
09:25 24 things were in 1998.

09:25 25 George W. Bush was still governor of

09:25 1 Texas. The iPhone wouldn't come out for another ten
09:25 2 years. Even the iPod didn't come out for another
09:25 3 couple of years in 2001. Computers in 1998, they were
09:25 4 bigger. They were slower. The Internet existed, but
09:25 5 it wasn't wireless, and it wasn't as fast or available
09:25 6 everywhere like it is now. That's what computing was
09:26 7 like back then.

09:26 8 Now, now that we're back in 1998, I want
09:26 9 to tell you about the new product. And it was a new
09:26 10 computer system, and I have one here. It's called the
09:26 11 Interputer and the iMod.

09:26 12 So we all know laptops and desktops,
09:26 13 computers. And this was a new idea. Dr. Chu thought
09:26 14 to put all the key parts of the computer, the guts, the
09:26 15 processor, which is the brain of the computer, the
09:26 16 memory, in this one module and have other parts in a
09:26 17 console.

09:26 18 And if you were at work and you had this
09:26 19 in the console at work and you wanted to go home, you
09:26 20 took this out, take this home, you have another one of
09:26 21 these at home, you plug it in, you're working on the
09:26 22 exact same computer.

09:26 23 It's kind of a cool idea, because this is
09:26 24 smaller than my laptop is today. It's barely as big as
09:26 25 a tablet. And this was 26 -- 25, 26 years ago.

09:26 1 But for this to work, it had to be small
09:27 2 and it had to be fast. And not just as fast as the
09:27 3 desktops and laptops existed at that time because it
09:27 4 has to keep working as the processor and the computer
09:27 5 gets faster and faster.

09:27 6 So Dr. Chu didn't just come up with
09:27 7 this -- this new form -- this new form for a computer.
09:27 8 Not -- that's a little different. This is the inside
09:27 9 of this. He redesigned the inside too.

09:27 10 Now, I'm to the part where I said I would
09:27 11 explain. I'm to the computer bus. A computer bus is a
09:27 12 communication pathway. It's a way for communication
09:27 13 and data to travel between different components inside
09:27 14 a computer.

09:27 15 If a computer is like a city, the bus is
09:27 16 a little bit like a road connecting those different
09:28 17 parts of the city. So this is a little bit of an
09:28 18 example that we made, a diagram of a computer bus where
09:28 19 we put a little road to show you that that's the
09:28 20 connection.

09:28 21 Now, a computer bus is made of wire.
09:28 22 It's really a little wire or a little trace of wire on
09:28 23 this -- this is called a circuit board. That's what --
09:28 24 a computer bus is connecting these different parts.

09:28 25 And there are a lot of -- there's a lot

09:28 1 of data, a lot of information that needs to move around
09:28 2 on the computer. And there can be traffic jams and
09:28 3 slowdowns.

09:28 4 And the computer buses at the time that
09:28 5 Dr. Chu came up with his invention in the late '90s,
09:28 6 they had some problems. Too slow, too many wires so
09:28 7 they take up too much space, too many errors.

09:28 8 And so he invented a new computer bus.
09:29 9 That's how he addressed the problem. He said, I'm just
09:29 10 going to invent a whole new computer bus for my
09:29 11 product. And he made some key improvements. This is a
09:29 12 little bit of the technical stuff, but I'm going to
09:29 13 explain it a little bit. And then like I said, we have
09:29 14 other experts that are going to explain it even more.

09:29 15 He made changes to those wires and those
09:29 16 communication pathways. That's what he really did. He
09:29 17 said, I'm not going to use this old kind. I'm going to
09:29 18 use a new kind when I'm designing my product.

09:29 19 The first thing he did was chose a
09:29 20 low-voltage channel. Voltage is the amount of energy
09:29 21 basically. Using a lower voltage means it's less power
09:29 22 hungry. It means, if it uses a battery, it can have a
09:29 23 longer battery. And it's actually even faster because,
09:29 24 if you don't have to charge up to a high voltage, it
09:29 25 can charge up a little faster.

09:29 1 So that's the low-voltage piece.

09:29 2 Then differential signal, I think this is
09:30 3 cool. The differential signal is a way to avoid
09:30 4 errors. And on a computer -- have you ever taken your
09:30 5 phone and, like, if you turn on the microwave, you hear
09:30 6 a weird sound on your phone, or you hear -- if you're
09:30 7 next to a speaker or something, you get a little
09:30 8 feedback with your phone?

09:30 9 That's electrical interference. And all
09:30 10 of these components use electricity. And so they
09:30 11 create just little bits of electrical interference,
09:30 12 which doesn't matter, you know, if you're this far away
09:30 13 from the computer. But if everything's this close
09:30 14 together, then that interference can matter. The
09:30 15 differential signal, it cancels out that interference
09:30 16 and reduces errors.

09:30 17 The next one on my list is
09:30 18 unidirectional. This is a computer engineer thing.
09:30 19 Why did they say unidirectional? They could have said
09:30 20 one way, because it means the same thing. It's one-way
09:30 21 communication. We had some stop lights on our diagram,
09:30 22 and some buses were like an intersection where if you
09:31 23 want to send information but when you got a red light
09:31 24 when you pull up to the intersection, then you have to
09:31 25 wait.

09:31 1 Dr. Chu's bus was like a highway. One
09:31 2 lane going eastbound, one lane going westbound, and you
09:31 3 don't have to stop. So that was a unidirectional
09:31 4 channel.

09:31 5 Now, another new aspect of Dr. Chu's new
09:31 6 bus was that it was serial, not parallel. So what does
09:31 7 that mean?

09:31 8 So this is the old bus. This is
09:31 9 parallel. Parallel means those -- all those little
09:31 10 ones and zeroes, that's data. Those are bits. And
09:31 11 look at them, side by side, just walking side by side
09:31 12 across all of those lines. So that's parallel
09:31 13 communication.

09:31 14 The new bus was serial communication.
09:31 15 Follow the leader. The data can just follow the
09:31 16 leader, and you need fewer lines for this type of
09:31 17 serial communication. So it takes up less space. And
09:31 18 as you can see, space is at a premium inside a
09:32 19 computer. So this had some key benefits.

09:32 20 Dr. Chu was the first one to design a
09:32 21 computer bus that was unidirectional, low voltage,
09:32 22 differential signal, and serial.

09:32 23 This was genius. I know you may not, you
09:32 24 know, know that because we don't know a lot about
09:32 25 computer buses, but this was the genius part. That --

09:32 1 and these benefits, smaller, faster, lower power, these
09:32 2 are the gold standards of computers. This is what
09:32 3 consumers and computer companies want in a computer.
09:32 4 Just like phones, they want to make it more powerful,
09:32 5 smaller, and faster.

09:32 6 And, oh, there's one more. I forgot.

09:32 7 It was backwards compatible. So his
09:32 8 changes were to those physical wires and the design of
09:32 9 everything inside the computer, but he wanted to make
09:32 10 sure that it would still work with older components,
09:33 11 even if they weren't necessarily expecting to have his
09:33 12 new bus in the mix. So these changes were to the
09:33 13 hardware, to the physical wires and design of the
09:33 14 computer.

09:33 15 And one of the cool parts about this and
09:33 16 a pretty important part for us today is that this new
09:33 17 bus, it didn't just work with his modular computer. It
09:33 18 worked with any type of computer. With a server, with
09:33 19 a laptop, with any type of computer. And so that is
09:33 20 part of why we're here today.

09:33 21 So that is the new product. This is the
09:33 22 new company. The new company was ACQIS. It was
09:33 23 founded to work on his new computer and his new
09:33 24 computer bus.

09:33 25 And there was initial buzz and sales, you

09:33 1 can see. It was written up in magazines. Then at the
09:33 2 time, people got hard copy magazines like WIRED and PC
09:33 3 World.

09:34 4 And he sought patent protection over all
09:34 5 the parts of his invention, including his new computer
09:34 6 bus.

09:34 7 Now, why did he seek patent protection?
09:34 8 He thought his new invention would be important. And
09:34 9 he wanted to strike that deal that you heard about in
09:34 10 the video, where you tell the Patent Office how your
09:34 11 new invention works, and you get the exclusive right to
09:34 12 develop and use it just like it says in the
09:34 13 Constitution.

09:34 14 So Dr. Chu, he received the patents that
09:34 15 we're here about today. Got all five of them.

09:34 16 Now, you may be asking yourself,
09:34 17 Mr. Collard, why are there five patents? And we're
09:34 18 going to talk about seven claims in these five patents.
09:34 19 Why not just one? I will tell you.

09:35 20 We were talking about how do you design
09:35 21 the inside of a computer. Well, there are lots of
09:35 22 different ways to do this. And Dr. Chu was thoughtful
09:35 23 about all of those different ways that his new bus
09:35 24 might be useful, and he wanted to disclose different
09:35 25 configurations that showed all the different ways that

09:35 1 his new bus could be used.

09:35 2 And so Dr. Chu did this work on his bus,
09:35 3 remember, in the late 1990s. And then those magazines
09:35 4 were from 2001. And he started applying for patents
09:35 5 back in the late '90s as well.

09:35 6 But in the mid 2000s, as computers were
09:35 7 getting faster, other computer companies, other people
09:35 8 in the computer industry started running into the exact
09:35 9 same problems that Dr. Chu had run into when he was
09:35 10 designing his new computer, and he anticipated those
09:36 11 problems.

09:36 12 So as other people's computers were
09:36 13 getting faster, there were bottlenecks and traffic jams
09:36 14 and interference and running out of space for more
09:36 15 wires, so computer companies started making some
09:36 16 changes to how they designed their own computer buses
09:36 17 to overcome those problems. And they started adopting
09:36 18 the same solutions, unidirectional, low voltage,
09:36 19 differential signal, serial, the same solutions that
09:36 20 Dr. Chu had thought of, written down, and submitted to
09:36 21 the Patent Office years earlier.

09:36 22 Here are two examples that you're going
09:36 23 to hear about: PCI Express and USB 3.0.

09:36 24 Okay. Now I want to talk to you about
09:36 25 something important about patent law. Dr. Chu was

09:36 1 first. It's really important. He was first. He was
09:36 2 the first one that designed a computer bus with all of
09:36 3 the elements that we're talking about and received
09:36 4 patent protection on it, ultimately.

09:37 5 So anyone that did it after Dr. Chu and
09:37 6 ACQIS needs a license if the technology in their
09:37 7 product is covered by ACQIS' patents. And this is
09:37 8 regardless of whether they actually knew about the
09:37 9 invention in the patents or not. They didn't have to
09:37 10 actually know.

09:37 11 Now, Dr. Chu did tell ASUS about his
09:37 12 patents, and we're going to get to that in a second.
09:37 13 And after he did, ASUS still did not take a license,
09:37 14 which is wrong.

09:37 15 But Dr. Chu kept an eye on the computer
09:37 16 industry, and he saw that they were adopting these same
09:37 17 improvements to their bus that was covered by the
09:37 18 claims of his patents. So he informed a lot of
09:37 19 computer companies about his patents and that they were
09:37 20 using ACQIS' intellectual property, and a lot of
09:37 21 computer companies agreed to get permission to use
09:37 22 ACQIS' technology.

09:37 23 They paid for licenses. And it's a lot
09:38 24 of companies you know.

09:38 25 A license is permission to practice

09:38 1 what's in ACQIS' patents in exchange for money or other
09:38 2 compensation. It's just like if somebody wants to use
09:38 3 your land to hunt or drill or put up a wind turbine,
09:38 4 they have to pay -- they have to compensate you to use
09:38 5 your property.

09:38 6 And imagine if they didn't. Imagine if
09:38 7 they just came on your land without permission. And if
09:38 8 you told them to leave or pay, they said, no. I'm just
09:38 9 staying.

09:38 10 In other words, computer companies that
09:38 11 paid money to ACQIS have the right to sell computer
09:38 12 products that work or made in the way that's described
09:38 13 in those claims of ACQIS' patents. It's really a lot
09:38 14 of companies that have paid ACQIS to use its property:
09:38 15 Dell, Samsung, Microsoft. But ASUS has not.

09:38 16 And that brings me to the ASUS group.
09:39 17 And like a lot of multinational companies, the ASUS
09:39 18 group is made up of a parent company and lots of
09:39 19 subsidiaries. We're going to talk about two
09:39 20 subsidiaries. But a parent company and lots of
09:39 21 subsidiaries.

09:39 22 Now, ASUSTeK Computer, Inc. is the parent
09:39 23 company that owns ASGL. ASGL is the company, it's the
09:39 24 shipping company, essentially, that ASUSTeK uses to
09:39 25 make sure their products get to the U.S.

09:39 1 And ASUSTeK also owns another subsidiary
09:39 2 called ACI, and that's the company that ASUSTeK uses to
09:39 3 sell computers in the United States.

09:39 4 Now, ASUSTeK will try to hide behind ACI
09:39 5 and maybe ASGL, but let there be no mistake, ASUSTeK is
09:39 6 running the show.

09:39 7 So the patents in this case, the patents
09:39 8 that we're going to talk about in this case, these
09:39 9 patents, they are on this slide, and they issued
09:40 10 between December 2013 and December 2016. That's these
09:40 11 five patents.

09:40 12 And Dr. Chu sent a letter to ASUSTeK in
09:40 13 May 2018 telling them about his patents and that other
09:40 14 companies had already paid for licenses, and he asked
09:40 15 ASUS to take one too.

09:40 16 He told them specifically about these
09:40 17 five patents. He put these five patent numbers in the
09:40 18 letter. He told them about the types of products at
09:40 19 ASUS that he thought were relevant to the patents, and
09:40 20 he told them about the type of technology, the serial
09:40 21 bus technology that he thought was relevant to the
09:40 22 patents.

09:40 23 And he sent the letter via FedEx. And he
09:40 24 got delivery confirmation, and he addressed it to the
09:40 25 CEO of ASUS.

09:40 1 Now, you may hear ASUS claim they don't
09:40 2 have a record of receiving it, but Dr. Chu has a
09:40 3 record. FedEx has a record.

09:41 4 Now, ASUS ignored him. They kept selling
09:41 5 products with his intellectual property. And after he
09:41 6 sent this letter, that is when ASUS' infringement
09:41 7 became willful. I mentioned that word before, and it
09:41 8 means they knew what it was doing. And you may be
09:41 9 asked to decide that issue later.

09:41 10 And Dr. Chu's only option to enforce his
09:41 11 patents and protect his property at that point is to
09:41 12 come to court. That's what you have to do if someone
09:41 13 won't agree to take a license. And that's why he
09:41 14 started this case back in 2020.

09:41 15 Since 2018, when he sent the letter,
09:41 16 since 2020, when he started this case, ASUS has not
09:41 17 agreed to pay for their use of ACQIS' property.

09:41 18 So we're here this week to ask you to
09:41 19 require the defendants to do what's right, to pay what
09:41 20 they owe just like all the other major computer
09:41 21 companies. You know, it isn't fair to ACQIS, and it
09:42 22 isn't fair to all the other companies that did the
09:42 23 right thing and paid ACQIS for permission.

09:42 24 Now, I want to explain to you just a
09:42 25 little bit -- just a little bit more detail about

09:42 1 infringement and what it means to show infringement and
09:42 2 how we're going to do that so you know what to expect
09:42 3 when we get to that part of our case.

09:42 4 So we hired an expert. And he's a
09:42 5 professor of computer engineering. His name is
09:42 6 Dr. Nabil Sarhan. And he analyzes the ASUS products,
09:42 7 and he compares them to the patents to determine if
09:42 8 they infringe. He analyzed more than 500 accused
09:42 9 products in this case.

09:42 10 And what you see here, you'll see
09:42 11 something like this later, and it's a checklist. This
09:42 12 is the claim. This is those boundaries of the
09:42 13 invention.

09:42 14 And so you'll see something like this.
09:42 15 He'll walk through, and he will tell you why, in his
09:43 16 expert opinion, this claim is met for this or that
09:43 17 product.

09:43 18 It would be really hard to do that for
09:43 19 500 products in a week. We don't have to do that. We
09:43 20 have agreed on two representative products. So these
09:43 21 products represent all the accused products in this
09:43 22 case, and the parties have agreed on that. And so
09:43 23 he'll do his analysis for these products.

09:43 24 Now, a tiny bit about damages and how we
09:43 25 intend to show damages in this trial.

09:43 1 As a jury, your power to -- your tool,
09:43 2 your power to address this dispute, to address the use
09:43 3 of ACQIS' intellectual property without permission, is
09:43 4 to award damages. And there's a whole specific method
09:43 5 that we will go through to show you what we think the
09:43 6 damages should be. Give you a very brief preview of
09:43 7 that.

09:43 8 It centers around something called a
09:44 9 "hypothetical negotiation." You literally imagine the
09:44 10 parties going through a negotiation and say, what do
09:44 11 you think, in this hypothetical imaginary negotiation,
09:44 12 where would the parties have ended up?

09:44 13 That's kind of how the whole thing works,
09:44 14 but there's a lot more specifics to it. And you'll
09:44 15 hear from -- we have an expert that does this kind of
09:44 16 analysis. His name is Justin Lewis. You'll hear from
09:44 17 him. He's been doing this for a long time.

09:44 18 THE COURT: Counsel.

09:44 19 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:44 20 He starts by looking at the parties' past
09:44 21 activity in licensing, like what did ACQIS do, what did
09:44 22 ASUS do. That's kind of the first thing. That's how
09:44 23 they approach real negotiations, and that's a good clue
09:44 24 on how they would approach a hypothetical negotiation.

09:44 25 And then he does a calculation. And I've

09:44 1 got kind of a simplified version of the calculation.
09:44 2 So the calculation starts with the number -- the sales
09:45 3 number for products that we contend have infringed the
09:45 4 patent in the -- in the time period of infringement.

09:45 5 And I actually want to point out to you
09:45 6 the patents are expired, but you really shouldn't let
09:45 7 that concern you. They expired in -- the last ones
09:45 8 expired in 2020. But we wouldn't be here today if that
09:45 9 meant that we couldn't have a suit about the patents.

09:45 10 You can go back in some cases six years,
09:45 11 but you can certainly go back to the notice letter. So
09:45 12 you'll hear some discussion about that, patents being
09:45 13 expired, but I don't think you should let that concern
09:45 14 you.

09:45 15 So he looks at the sales during the key
09:45 16 period, and that number, we'll get -- he'll get a
09:45 17 specific number, but that number is over 4 billion.
09:45 18 And then he does something to that number. It's called
09:45 19 the "apportionment factor." Again, I'm not going to
09:45 20 delve into that too much during opening.

09:45 21 But he doesn't take the whole amount. He
09:45 22 focuses on the parts of the product that benefit from
09:45 23 Dr. Chu's invention. So there are parts that maybe
09:46 24 aren't really related, and they try to factor those
09:46 25 out. So that's -- the number goes down. This reduces

09:46 1 the number. And that's your base. It's still over 3
09:46 2 billion.

09:46 3 And then he comes up with a royalty rate,
09:46 4 and that's a percentage. And it's a percentage of
09:46 5 sales that, in his expert opinion, ASUSTeK would have
09:46 6 agreed to in that imaginary negotiation to pay ACQIS in
09:46 7 order to continue to have the right to sell -- to sell
09:46 8 products that benefit from ACQIS' invention. At least
09:46 9 the right to sell during that period.

09:46 10 Now, that number is 1 percent,
09:46 11 1.15 percent. Just a little over 1 percent. And that
09:46 12 is in line with what other companies -- we saw that
09:46 13 slide -- that's in line with what the other companies
09:46 14 have agreed to pay ACQIS to benefit from ACQIS'
09:46 15 property, its patents.

09:46 16 And so then you multiply that percent
09:47 17 times the base and that comes to 39.5 million. Just a
09:47 18 little bit over that. And that number is based on
09:47 19 actual prior sales of computers in the United States,
09:47 20 and it's a small percentage of the 4 billion that ASUS
09:47 21 has made on those sales.

09:47 22 And that amount, that 39.5 million,
09:47 23 previewed this last week, is the amount that ASUS
09:47 24 should be required to pay to ACQIS in this case.

09:47 25 So why won't ASUS do what's right? ASUS

09:47 1 is going to have some excuses to try to justify their
09:47 2 actions. This might stick in your memory. I hope it
09:47 3 does.

09:47 4 I once heard a senior lawyer, his name is
09:47 5 George Chandler, and he is a graduate of Baylor law,
09:47 6 actually. And he described a dog bite case that he
09:47 7 had, something he calls the Fido defense. And if you
09:47 8 come into a courtroom and you say you've been bitten by
09:47 9 a dog, the other side, the side that's the dog owner,
09:47 10 might say, it's not my dog. I don't own a dog. That
09:47 11 might be the first thing they say.

09:48 12 Well, then you prove that they own the
09:48 13 dog. And the next thing they say, well, okay. It's my
09:48 14 dog, but it didn't bite you.

09:48 15 And then the -- if you prove that the dog
09:48 16 bit you, then the next thing they say, well, it didn't
09:48 17 hurt you very much. And --

09:48 18 THE COURT: Counsel.

09:48 19 MR. COLLARD: Thank you.

09:48 20 I think you're going to hear the Fido
09:48 21 defense from ASUS. I think you're going to hear, you
09:48 22 got the wrong company.

09:48 23 I think you're going to hear, those
09:48 24 patents, they're not even valid. And even if they're
09:48 25 valid, they're not infringed.

09:48 1 And remember from last week when you
09:48 2 heard the jury instructions, validity is a very high
09:48 3 bar. They have to prove by clear and convincing
09:48 4 evidence. That means you can have no hesitation.

09:48 5 So if you don't go for that, then they're
09:48 6 going to say, well, that's minimal damages.

09:48 7 The Fido defense is a lighthearted
09:48 8 example, but it stuck with me for a long time, so I
09:49 9 thought it might help you.

09:49 10 Dr. Chu has a right to protect his
09:49 11 property. His intellectual property is protected in
09:49 12 his patents as required by the United States
09:49 13 Constitution. The ASUS defendants cannot use Dr. Chu's
09:49 14 property without paying for it. And intellectual
09:49 15 property and patents, it represents our ideas.

09:49 16 This is Dr. Chu's genius, his ideas, his
09:49 17 decades of hard work. He invented new computer bus
09:49 18 technology that ASUS benefits from. He told them about
09:49 19 it, but ASUS imported and sold computer products in the
09:49 20 U.S. for years without his permission.

09:49 21 Now, we come to you as a jury to make the
09:49 22 final decision on how to handle this dispute. And at
09:49 23 the end of our case, we will be asking you to find that
09:49 24 the ACQIS patents are valid, that they are infringed by
09:49 25 the defendants, that that infringement was willful, and

09:50 1 that the appropriate damage amount for ASUS -- the ASUS
09:50 2 defendants to pay ACQIS is 39.5 million to account for
09:50 3 that infringement.

09:50 4 We trust you'll do what's fair. Thank
09:50 5 you very much.

09:50 6 THE COURT: Thank you, sir.

09:50 7 Counsel?

09:50 8 OPENING STATEMENT ON BEHALF OF THE DEFENDANT

09:50 9 MR. BURESH: Good morning again, ladies
09:50 10 and gentlemen. And I know you heard my name on
09:50 11 Thursday, and I just mentioned it again. But I want to
09:50 12 make sure we are all on equal footing. I know you've
09:50 13 sent in your questionnaires and you told us about
09:50 14 yourselves, so I want you to know who I am too.

09:50 15 I am a lawyer from Kansas City. I grew
09:50 16 up further west in Kansas. I have been married to my
09:50 17 wife Terah, which is a name out of the Old Testament
09:51 18 from Abraham's family, been married to her for 28 years
09:51 19 now. We have four boys. They're not boys anymore.

09:51 20 My oldest, Ethan, is married and out of
09:51 21 the house. My second oldest, Noah, is married and out
09:51 22 of the house. My third son, Grant, is not married, but
09:51 23 he's actually living here in Waco and is out of the
09:51 24 house.

09:51 25 And then we had a little bit of a

09:51 1 surprise. His name was Hudson, and he's a junior in
09:51 2 high school, so he's running a little bit behind the
09:51 3 rest of them. We actually nicknamed him the closer
09:51 4 when he came through because, well, he's the closer.

09:51 5 So that's me.

09:51 6 I also know, as you sit here in the jury
09:51 7 box, a lot of times you can be looking around the room
09:51 8 and wondering what everybody's doing. Like, what role
09:51 9 do they play? So I want to introduce the rest of my
09:51 10 team as well.

09:51 11 You met Travis Underwood. He's on my
09:51 12 team from here in Texas.

09:51 13 Some other folks you'll hear from is
09:51 14 Michelle Marriott, who's with me up in Kansas City.

09:52 15 Mark Lang, you won't hear from him, but
09:52 16 he runs everything for us behind the scenes and keeps
09:52 17 us going smooth. So he has a very important job.

09:52 18 Ms. Kathleen Fitterling, who I introduced
09:52 19 a moment ago. She is the brains behind me, candidly.
09:52 20 She's the smartest one at my table that works with me.

21 Ann Marie is --

09:52 22 Could you raise your hand, Ann Marie?

09:52 23 She's our paralegal. She keeps
09:52 24 everything organized, which we wouldn't be able to do
09:52 25 anything without her.

09:52 1 And then Mr. Derek Palisoul, sitting back
09:52 2 there behind the computer screens. He makes all the
09:52 3 magic happen on the screens in front of you. And I'll
09:52 4 just tell you upfront, if I get off track and
09:52 5 something's not appearing and I'm mixed up, it's not
09:52 6 Derek's fault. That's my fault. I've gone somewhere
09:52 7 astray. So don't blame him.

09:52 8 That's our team, and we are happy to be
09:52 9 here. We -- really, it is our pleasure to both appear
09:53 10 before this Court, to appear before you all, and it's
09:53 11 our pleasure to represent ASUSTeK and ASGL.

09:53 12 And we are here to tell you that all the
09:53 13 somewhat nasty things that are being said about these
09:53 14 companies, they're not true. We deny all of them.

09:53 15 And as you all know, when you came on
09:53 16 Thursday morning and -- one of the things you raised
09:53 17 your paddles to, if you remember, is that companies
09:53 18 that are accused -- that are wrongly accused, they get
09:53 19 to come into court and they get to defend themselves.
09:53 20 That's what we're doing.

09:53 21 I want to introduce a couple of important
09:53 22 folks. These are the witnesses, the representatives of
09:53 23 the companies.

09:53 24 So the first company that we're hearing
09:53 25 about is ASUSTeK. Now, they are located on a small

09:53 1 island off the coast of China that I'm sure many of you
09:53 2 have heard of called Taiwan, okay?

09:53 3 And from ASUSTeK --

09:53 4 If you could wave.

09:54 5 -- is Ms. Barbara Chen. All right. And
09:54 6 she'll be testifying to you in a few days when it's our
09:54 7 turn. All right.

09:54 8 Another island in Asia where ASGL is
09:54 9 located, this is called Singapore. All right.

09:54 10 And, Ms. Emma Ou, if you could wave.

09:54 11 Ms. Emma Ou is from Singapore.

09:54 12 Now, these ladies get the blue ribbon for
09:54 13 having traveled the longest distance to be here. And
09:54 14 they have come here to be with you, to talk to you
09:54 15 because they want to raise their paddles. They want to
09:54 16 say exactly what I've said. The allegations against
09:54 17 them are wrong. That's why they're here.

09:54 18 One company you've also heard about --

09:54 19 Is that red dot working for you all when
09:54 20 I put it on the screen?

09:54 21 Okay. Thank you.

09:54 22 ACI. Now, we're being accused of hiding
09:55 23 behind ACI. We're not the ones talking about ACI.

09:55 24 Okay. We're not -- we claim the puppy. It was a cute
09:55 25 puppy by the way. We claim that puppy. We're not

09:55 1 hiding behind anything. It's the plaintiffs that are
09:55 2 talking about ACI.

09:55 3 And this is weird. I want you to watch
09:55 4 out for this, okay?

09:55 5 So here's the deal. When you look at one
09:55 6 of your patents in your notebooks, you're going to see
09:55 7 on it: United States patent. United States patent.
09:55 8 That's because it deals with United States activity.
09:55 9 That's what they're designed to protect.

09:55 10 Now, these two companies -- and you will
09:55 11 hear this from Ms. -- from my clients. You will hear
09:55 12 that they don't do anything in the U.S. You will hear
09:55 13 from plaintiffs that ACI does activity in the U.S. But
09:55 14 ACI isn't here.

09:55 15 And one of the questions I want you to
09:56 16 ask is: With a company sitting here in California, why
09:56 17 did the plaintiffs choose to drag people from clear
09:56 18 around the world and not sue ACI?

09:56 19 Maybe they'll explain that to you; maybe
09:56 20 they won't. I don't know. But it's a question.
09:56 21 That's all a side dish, okay?

09:56 22 The main course, the ribeye, if you will,
09:56 23 is a patent infringement case. And questions before
09:56 24 you are going to be: Did ASUSTeK and ASGL use the
09:56 25 patents? Did they use Dr. Chu's technology?

09:56 1 And the answer is unequivocally no.

09:56 2 We're going to have to walk through that
09:56 3 over the course of a week. I'm not going to try and
09:56 4 firehose you all this morning, okay? There's no
09:56 5 possible way that I'm going to explain computer buses
09:56 6 in 30 minutes.

09:56 7 So we're going to spend the week doing
09:56 8 that. And at the end of it, you're going to see we
09:56 9 don't use their technology, period. Hard stop. We
09:57 10 don't do it. Okay?

09:57 11 But before we get into all that, look
09:57 12 around this courtroom. It's kind of an impressive
09:57 13 place, isn't it? You've got the high bench for the
09:57 14 Judge, which is symbolic. His authority.

09:57 15 I'll also tell you that the power in this
09:57 16 case, in this jury trial, it rests right here in the
09:57 17 jury box. The Judge ain't going to be deciding this
09:57 18 case. You guys will be, okay?

09:57 19 You're the power in this room. Not to
09:57 20 disrespect His Honor's authority; he runs the case.

09:57 21 This big beam running across the room
09:57 22 here with the little gate in it, you see that? That's
09:57 23 called the bar.

09:57 24 Now, what does that symbolize?

09:57 25 That symbolizes that this whole area on

09:57 1 this side of the room is set apart from the other area.
09:57 2 See, out there's the public, and in here is the sacred
09:58 3 place, the set apart place.

09:58 4 Why is it sacred? Why is your job
09:58 5 important?

09:58 6 It's because this is where, in this
09:58 7 sacred area, we find truth. In this sacred area is
09:58 8 where we do justice. Just -- in a patent case, just
09:58 9 like any other case, we seek truth and we do justice.
09:58 10 That's important.

09:58 11 Now, y'all might be sitting there -- I do
09:58 12 this a little bit, so I know the juries will sit here
09:58 13 and you folks are saying, how in the world am I
09:58 14 supposed to do justice when we're talking about
09:58 15 patents, because I don't know anything about patents?
09:58 16 How am I supposed to do justice when we're talking
09:58 17 about computer buses and technology and all that when I
09:58 18 don't know anything about those?

09:58 19 Let me tell you how, okay?

09:58 20 This is why the jury system works. Each
09:58 21 one of you have your life stories, right? You've had
09:58 22 your ups; you've had your downs. You've had your bumps
09:59 23 and bruises. You've had your successes. You've seen
09:59 24 some good people, and you've seen some bad people.

09:59 25 All those stories come together to give

09:59 1 you each individually what we call common sense. Y'all
09:59 2 agree with that, you have some common sense?

09:59 3 Now, when you get in the room and there's
09:59 4 seven of you all coming from your different angles with
09:59 5 your own common sense, it is powerful. It's a powerful
09:59 6 thing. And what it enables you to do is smell the
09:59 7 truth, to sense it. You will know who's right. You
09:59 8 will know where justice lies. You will know where the
09:59 9 truth is because of your common sense.

09:59 10 Now, one of the -- as I look at a case, I
09:59 11 like to kind of take a step back, look at it and say,
09:59 12 what's the thread? Okay. What's the thing that ties
09:59 13 this all together?

09:59 14 And in this case, the thread of common
09:59 15 sense that ties it all together is this: You only get
10:00 16 credit for the work that you actually do.

10:00 17 Let me say that again: You only get
10:00 18 credit for the work that you actually do.

10:00 19 You spin it around. You don't get credit
10:00 20 for the work that you don't do.

10:00 21 Is that common sense?

10:00 22 Okay. Keep that thread in mind. It's
10:00 23 really important in this case.

10:00 24 This is a -- the same basic timeline. It
10:00 25 looks a little different, but we're going to talk about

10:00 1 the same dates here.

10:00 2 In January of 1998, Dr. Chu came up with
10:00 3 an idea, and he wrote it down on something called
10:00 4 "white papers." That process took him three weeks to
10:00 5 do, okay, just write his ideas down. White papers.
10:00 6 We're going to see them. Watch for those as they come.

10:00 7 This early time frame is really
10:00 8 important. All right.

10:00 9 After that he filed some patent
10:01 10 applications. The first one was in May of 1998 and
10:01 11 then May 1999 and May of 2000, through that window.
10:01 12 Patent applications. We will spend a lot of time
10:01 13 looking in that time window because what he actually
10:01 14 did, the work that he actually did is really important.

10:01 15 Why? You remember the barbed wire fence
10:01 16 from Mr. Collard's opening statement? The barbed wire?
10:01 17 That barbed wire don't get to move as time goes on.
10:01 18 Okay? Keep that in mind. Those fences, once you've
10:01 19 stunk -- once you have -- not stunk them -- once you
10:01 20 have sunk them in the ground, they need to stay put.
10:01 21 Keep that in mind.

10:01 22 So what work did Dr. Chu actually do in
10:01 23 this early time? I have this pretty picture. We'll
10:01 24 see this out of the document, but --

10:01 25 May I borrow this, Dr. Chu?

10:01 1 This is it. It's called an "attached
10:01 2 computer module," okay, that you would slide into a
10:01 3 console. Okay? And then they would need to talk to
10:02 4 each other. We're not talking about computer buses
10:02 5 inside of here. We're talking about how this talks to
10:02 6 this once they're put together.

10:02 7 Dr. Chu called that ability to talk, that
10:02 8 channel, if you will, he called it an "XP Bus." XP
10:02 9 Bus. Stood for cross peripheral, between this and
10:02 10 this. Okay?

10:02 11 You're not going to see anything like
10:02 12 that from my clients. You're not going to see anything
10:02 13 remotely resembling that from my clients.

10:02 14 That was the work that he actually did.
10:02 15 And we'll get into this XP Bus as we go forward.

10:02 16 Again, lots of details. Look for that as
10:02 17 we move through the case.

10:02 18 Why is it important to keep the fence
10:02 19 posts in the same place? Because technology moves
10:03 20 quick. Do y'all remember what technology was like back
10:03 21 in 1998? Did anybody have a phone in their pocket back
10:03 22 then?

10:03 23 Where are we today? It's an eternity.

10:03 24 I mean, you know, going back to our
10:03 25 puppy, you know dog years, 7 to 1 or whatever.

10:03 1 Computers are like 50 to 1. They go so fast.

10:03 2 What was happening in the industry?

10:03 3 So as Dr. Chu was messing around with
10:03 4 this thing, the Interputer, the rest of the computer
10:03 5 industry had come together to develop the technology
10:03 6 that we're actually using today in all of our
10:03 7 computers. Okay? They're called "standards."

10:03 8 Why are they called standards? It's not
10:03 9 mysterious. It's because they're standard. They're in
10:03 10 everything. Okay?

10:04 11 You all know USB. I'm going to talk
10:04 12 about that first because it's more comfortable.

10:04 13 USB is -- you have them everywhere. You
10:04 14 can plug a USB cord in and charge your phone in your
10:04 15 car. If you go to a hotel room, you can plug it into a
10:04 16 lamp to get power to charge your cell phone.

10:04 17 You plug, you know, a mouse into your
10:04 18 desktop computer with USB, a keyboard USB, a monitor
10:04 19 USB. You use a USB for everything. It's prolific.

10:04 20 PCI Express is inside of computers, and
10:04 21 it's the way a processor will talk to memory or a
10:04 22 processor will talk to another piece of your computer.
10:04 23 Okay? So it's inside.

10:04 24 The industry came together over a number
10:04 25 of years. These projects take on average three years,

10:04 1 and they involve 50 different companies, hundreds of
10:04 2 different engineers from those companies. And they're
10:04 3 the brightest minds.

10:04 4 You get the very best to come together to
10:04 5 do these standards because they're going to be in
10:04 6 everything. And you want to know something? They give
10:05 7 those standards away for free. They give them away for
10:05 8 free so that we all can enjoy them.

10:05 9 I'm doing terrible with this microphone.

10:05 10 So that they -- we all can enjoy them.
10:05 11 They're in all of our computers. That's why.

10:05 12 I want to introduce somebody who's not
10:05 13 going to be in court with us until he testifies.

10:05 14 This is Mr. Ajay Bhatt. He used to work
10:05 15 for Intel. And Ajay Bhatt invented USB. He developed
10:05 16 the USB 3 that we're going to be talking about in this
10:05 17 case, along with a team of about 200 other people.

10:05 18 He also -- after he was done working on
10:05 19 USB, he developed PCI Express, another three-year
10:05 20 project.

10:05 21 His mom is elderly. They live in
10:05 22 Portland. He's the primary caregiver to his mother, so
10:05 23 he's not going to be with us the whole time. He will
10:05 24 just come in, he'll testify, and he'll leave.

10:05 25 But I'm looking forward to his testimony.

10:06 1 He's done the work. Okay? He has done the work on
10:06 2 these standards. He's brought us this technology, he
10:06 3 and a lot of other people.

10:06 4 Among those companies that were involved
10:06 5 in doing this, ASUSTeK, in developing this new
10:06 6 technology that we're actually using in our computers.

10:06 7 So I look forward to meeting him. I look
10:06 8 forward to sharing his testimony with you.

10:06 9 Now, let's close out some more of the
10:06 10 story.

10:06 11 After the industry has developed PCI
10:06 12 Express and the industry has developed USB, we need to
10:06 13 jump ahead from May of 1999 to May of 2018. Okay?
10:06 14 That's approximately a 20-year jump.

10:06 15 And what does Dr. Chu do?

10:06 16 In May of 2018, he sends a letter to
10:06 17 ASUSTeK. And he's looking back in the rearview mirror
10:06 18 across time. And he says, PCI Express and USB are
10:06 19 pretty cool. They're in everything. I did that.
10:07 20 Okay?

10:07 21 From Interputer to -- I've changed the
10:07 22 computer industry with brand new technology that is
10:07 23 amazing and works for everyone. I did all that work.

10:07 24 That's a big claim. That's a massive
10:07 25 claim. And it's not true. He didn't do that work.

10:07 1 Y'all ever hear of a fisherman's tale? Like I caught a
10:07 2 fish and three years later, it's twice the size of the
10:07 3 one I actually caught? That's happening here too.

10:07 4 Let me tell you a story. I was -- this
10:07 5 is in high school. Now, up in Kansas, we have bass,
10:07 6 crappie, channel cat. I think that's the same stuff
10:07 7 you're going to have around here in Lake Waco or
10:07 8 whatever, but correct me if I'm wrong.

10:08 9 We were fishing for crappie, a buddy of
10:08 10 my mine named Andy and me. We were going from brush
10:08 11 pile to brush pile. Hit this one brush pile that had
10:08 12 crappie stacked in it like pancakes at the IHOP. I
10:08 13 mean, they were thick in this brush pile.

10:08 14 We're jigging. All of a sudden, we start
10:08 15 hitting the fish. We caught 32 fish in about
10:08 16 25 minutes. It was intense. I know how many fish we
10:08 17 caught because we took them back to my truck. We laid
10:08 18 them out in the bed.

10:08 19 And I had one of those portable throwaway
10:08 20 cameras that used to be around in the day before we had
10:08 21 phones that took pictures. I snapped a photo. I have
10:08 22 that photo.

10:08 23 Now, my buddy Andy, he's an excitable
10:08 24 fellow. About two years later, we're still fishing.
10:08 25 He's talking about that day. He said, I bet we caught

10:08 1 40 fish that day. That's okay.

10:08 2 I saw him ten years later. We were
10:08 3 recounting that story. It was 50 fish.

10:08 4 Just last year I was with him. We went
10:09 5 fishing again. And he goes, you remember that day
10:09 6 on -- it was Lake Perry. He goes, you remember that
10:09 7 day on Lake Perry?

10:09 8 I said, yeah. What's he going to say?
10:09 9 What's he going to say?

10:09 10 My buddy Andy says, we must have caught
10:09 11 100 fish that day.

10:09 12 Okay? That's ten years after the -- that
10:09 13 was 15, 20 years after the fact. The story got bigger,
10:09 14 and so is Dr. Chu's.

10:09 15 That's why we got to look at those early
10:09 16 days and say, what was the work that he actually did?
10:09 17 Okay? What did he actually do? We don't get to wait
10:09 18 20 years later and then listen to his story. We got to
10:09 19 go back and see what it actually was.

10:09 20 I want to ask you a few commonsense
10:09 21 questions now. Okay? Looking at this timeline, we
10:09 22 have three weeks worth of writing white papers in
10:10 23 January of 1998.

10:10 24 Does it make sense that three weeks worth
10:10 25 of thinking is the same as all of the industry experts

10:10 1 coming together, 200 of them, over the course of not
10:10 2 one three-year period but two three-year periods and
10:10 3 developing brand new technology? So six years worth of
10:10 4 work for the whole industry or three weeks? Does that
10:10 5 make sense that he's doing the same work?

10:10 6 Let's try this from a different angle.
10:10 7 Does it make sense -- let's go back.

10:10 8 Barbed wire, you just heard about that.
10:10 9 Barbed wire. Man, my clients got out their snippers
10:10 10 and they cut through that barbed wire. That's the
10:10 11 allegation, right?

10:10 12 Now, does anybody own property? I think
10:10 13 you said you did. Yeah. If you have barbed wire up
10:10 14 and somebody's going to come traipsing through your
10:11 15 property and they cut your barbed wire down and start,
10:11 16 you know, laying pipes or cutting timber or whatever it
10:11 17 is they're doing that you don't want them doing on
10:11 18 property, what do you do?

10:11 19 Well, I know what Dr. Chu did. He waited
10:11 20 for 18 years to say something.

10:11 21 Now, let me be more accurate. More
10:11 22 accurate. PCI Express came out in 2003, and this isn't
10:11 23 a secret document. It's an industry standard. It's
10:11 24 free to everyone. Everybody knows what's going on.

10:11 25 ASUSTeK starts using it in their

10:11 1 computers in 2004. Okay? So let's assume that's when
10:11 2 they cut the barbed wire.

10:11 3 Now, does it make sense -- if there's a
10:11 4 legitimate claim from Dr. Chu, does it make sense that
10:11 5 he sits on his hands for 14 years from that point?
10:11 6 That's hard to fathom. If somebody's jumping on your
10:11 7 property and doing something you don't want them to do,
10:12 8 you stand up and say something. You don't wait for
10:12 9 14 years.

10:12 10 But I'll tell you what he waited until.
10:12 11 If you look closely at this slide here, you see
10:12 12 May 15th of 2019. That's when his patents started
10:12 13 expiring. He sent his letter one year to the day
10:12 14 before his patents started expiring because he was
10:12 15 running out of window to do all the stuff he wants to
10:12 16 do, which is sue.

10:12 17 That's why he sent a letter. Not because
10:12 18 he had the legitimate claim; because his windows closed
10:12 19 after 14 years. Does that make sense?

10:12 20 Let me give you another fact. Now, I've
10:12 21 added a data point on this screen here. November 1998
10:12 22 to April 2000. You see that one? Here, I can use
10:12 23 my -- right there. That's when Dr. Chu was working on
10:12 24 his Interputer, trying to get this module to talk to
10:12 25 the console.

10:12 1 And remember the XP Bus that I mentioned
10:13 2 earlier? I'll give you another fact. It never worked.
10:13 3 The XP Bus didn't work. Dr. Chu, with his impressive
10:13 4 education, couldn't get it to work. He tried. Hired
10:13 5 other engineers and tried. It didn't work.

10:13 6 Does it make sense that his XP Bus that
10:13 7 didn't work, that he couldn't get to work, is the same
10:13 8 technology that all of the best minds in the industry
10:13 9 came up with over the next eight or nine years?

10:13 10 Does it make sense that the best minds in
10:13 11 the industry somehow decided to use the technology that
10:13 12 Dr. Chu couldn't even get to work?

10:13 13 None of that makes sense. Because the
10:13 14 reality is what he's saying isn't right. The work that
10:14 15 he did has nothing to do with these standards that
10:14 16 we're talking about here today.

10:14 17 Let me introduce another gentleman.

10:14 18 Dr. Edwards, could you stand up? And sit
10:14 19 back down. Thank you.

10:14 20 Dr. Edwards is a professor at Columbia
10:14 21 University. He has been what I would call monkeying
10:14 22 around with computers since he was 12 years old. Okay?
10:14 23 He loves computers. He's a professor talking about
10:14 24 computers. He teaches classes on all this stuff. He
10:14 25 has a love for computers that I don't personally share,

10:14 1 but I'm happy to talk about it with him. Okay?

10:14 2 He will come and teach you everything you
10:14 3 need to know about the details here. He'll walk you
10:14 4 through this early time frame. He'll walk you through
10:14 5 these standards, talk about the things that Mr. Bhatt
10:14 6 developed. And he will show you that they're totally
10:14 7 different. So wait for that testimony as well.

10:14 8 What Dr. Chu is doing is ignoring the
10:15 9 context of his work. He's growing the number of fish.

10:15 10 Let me give you another example. I'm a
10:15 11 littler boy now, okay? I'm talking five, six years
10:15 12 old, and we lived in a small town.

10:15 13 Now, when I would do my chores well
10:15 14 during the week, my dad would sometimes take me to this
10:15 15 little five and dime in the downtown. It was called
10:15 16 Woolworth. Y'all ever heard of that store?

10:15 17 Woolworth was -- it was great. They
10:15 18 actually had a fountain where you could get soda --
10:15 19 sodas. And anyway, that's neither here nor there, and
10:15 20 I'm not focused on that.

10:15 21 But the idea was we'd go in there and
10:15 22 there is this little toy aisle, and my dad would say,
10:15 23 you can get whatever toy you want off of this. Now,
10:15 24 they were not fancy toys. They were about -- I think
10:15 25 the most expensive one was maybe a buck 50, but I could

10:15 1 choose whatever I wanted off there. And --

10:15 2 THE COURT: Counsel, you have five
10:15 3 minutes.

10:15 4 MR. BURESH: Thank you, Your Honor.

10:15 5 Three times I chose this toy airplane.
10:16 6 They're in this plastic bag. This toy airplane was
10:16 7 made out of light wood, balsa, if anybody knows what
10:16 8 that is. And they had a propeller and a rubber band,
10:16 9 so you could spin it up and the rubber band would act
10:16 10 as the motor. All right.

10:16 11 Now, I'd go home with this toy airplane,
10:16 12 I'd wind it up, and I'd let that thing go. In my mind,
10:16 13 it was going to do loops and fly around for five
10:16 14 minutes and be beautiful. Any guesses on what
10:16 15 happened?

10:16 16 I'd spin it up, throw it, (indicating).
10:16 17 Every time. I was so disappointed. That plane didn't
10:16 18 work worth a diddle, all right?

10:16 19 But here's the thing: How does that
10:16 20 apply to what we're talking about?

10:16 21 Let's say I was the inventor of that toy
10:16 22 airplane, so I get my papers out, I write it down, I
10:16 23 say I'm inventing a toy airplane. It's made of light
10:17 24 wood. It's got wings. It's for flying. It's got a
10:17 25 motor with a rubber band. Okay. That's my work.

10:17 1 That's what I'm entitled to credit to.

10:17 2 Now, let's say I wait for 18 years. I
10:17 3 let 18 years pass. And then I think, man, that toy
10:17 4 airplane isn't doing very good. But I see that the Air
10:17 5 Force has come out with some pretty cool stuff. The
10:17 6 Air Force has come out with their F-35 stealth fighter
10:17 7 plane. It's amazing technology.

10:17 8 Now, what I think I really invented was
10:17 9 an airplane. Let's don't worry about the toy. Now, it
10:17 10 has wings. It's got a motor. Let's not worry about
10:17 11 the rubber band. And suddenly, the Air Force gets a
10:17 12 letter that says I invented the F-35 stealth fighter.

10:18 13 Does that all make sense? Does that
10:18 14 work?

10:18 15 No. It doesn't. That's not right. It's
10:18 16 not right because in the patent law we have this thing
10:18 17 called a bargain. The bargain is you tell -- inventor
10:18 18 tells the public, all of us, here's what my invention
10:18 19 is in 1998, 1999. Here's what it is. I'm going to
10:18 20 write it down.

10:18 21 Those fence posts have to stick because I
10:18 22 don't get to move them over time to see the good stuff
10:18 23 that came out after me and claim that I invented that.
10:18 24 I don't get to claim other people's work.

10:18 25 If I invented a toy airplane of balsa

10:18 1 wood with a rubber band, I get that. I don't get the
10:18 2 stealth fighter. It has to stay put, okay? That's the
10:18 3 bargain. That's the handshake.

10:19 4 And in exchange for disclosing that, for
10:19 5 nailing your fence posts down, what do you get in
10:19 6 return? Patent rights.

10:19 7 Now, if you can break that bargain and
10:19 8 you come in later and you say, I invented the stealth
10:19 9 fighter, here's the deal. You have broken the bargain.
10:19 10 At the very foundation of the patent system, you've
10:19 11 broken it. Split the foundation.

10:19 12 And that is why when someone does that,
10:19 13 their patent is held invalid. That's why. They broke
10:19 14 the bargain.

10:19 15 And that is what should happen in this
10:19 16 case because Dr. Chu is claiming work that he didn't
10:19 17 do.

10:19 18 Why's he doing that? Why would he do
10:19 19 that?

10:19 20 You've already heard it. It's 40 million
10:19 21 reasons. It's money. Y'all heard the saying: The
10:20 22 love of money is what? It's the root of all kinds of
10:20 23 problems, okay?

10:20 24 That's what it's about. That's why he's
10:20 25 doing this.

10:20 1 On that point, Mr. Newell, Mike Newell,
10:20 2 could you stand up?

10:20 3 Mr. Newell's going to be our last
10:20 4 witness. The point of his testimony will be that the
10:20 5 credit that Dr. Chu is seeking in this case is not
10:20 6 remotely real world. It's a bunch of hooey, okay?

10:20 7 They're going to talk about all these
10:20 8 licenses, and what they're implying to you is because
10:20 9 other people have settled, that ASUSTeK has to also,
10:20 10 okay?

10:20 11 That's the little secret. All these,
10:20 12 they've paid us for our technology. They lined up
10:20 13 because we had such an awesome XP Bus that didn't work.
10:20 14 No. No. No. Dr. Chu has sued everyone under the sun
10:21 15 in the computer industry. Dr. Chu has gotten people to
10:21 16 settle to get out of their lawsuits. That's it.

10:21 17 Does that mean that ASUSTeK doesn't get
10:21 18 to raise their paddle and defend themselves when they
10:21 19 choose to do so?

10:21 20 No. That's their right. It doesn't
10:21 21 matter if other companies choose to settle.

10:21 22 At the end of this week, I'm going to
10:21 23 come back up and ask you that commonsense question
10:21 24 again. Remember, we only get credit for the work that
10:21 25 we actually do. And I'm going to ask you guys to give

10:21 1 credit where the credit is due.

10:21 2 Mr. Bhatt, he did the work. ASUSTeK, the
10:21 3 rest of the computer industry, they did the work. They
10:21 4 get the credit.

10:21 5 I'm going to ask you to give Dr. Chu the
10:21 6 credit that he is due also, and that's zero. That's
10:21 7 nothing. He didn't do the work he's claiming.

10:22 8 I really do appreciate your attention.
10:22 9 There will be some slogs as we go through this case.
10:22 10 There will be some technical information. Bear with
10:22 11 it, okay? You'll get there in the end.

10:22 12 But I do appreciate your attention, and
10:22 13 thank you very much for your time.

10:22 14 THE COURT: Counsel, you may call your
10:22 15 first witness.

10:22 16 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

10:22 17 We call Dr. Bill Chu.

10:22 18 Your Honor, we have a couple of physical
10:22 19 items that I'm going to move up to the witness stand if
10:22 20 that's okay.

10:22 21 THE COURT: Sure.

10:22 22 (The witness was sworn.)

10:23 23 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I want to be
10:23 24 sensitive, if you're thinking of a morning break, do
10:23 25 you want me to look for a spot in a certain period of

10:23 1 time to take a break?

10:23 2 THE COURT: Why don't we -- yeah. Why
10:24 3 don't you go ahead and get started, and then I'll find
10:24 4 a place to break?

10:24 5 Thank you.

10:24 6 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

10:24 7 DIRECT EXAMINATION

10:24 8 BY MR. COLLARD:

10:24 9 Q. Good morning, Dr. Chu.

10:24 10 A. Good morning.

10:24 11 Q. Can you please state your full name for the
10:24 12 jury?

10:24 13 A. My name is William Wing Yen Chu. Wing spells
10:24 14 W-i-n-g. Yen spells Y-e-n.

10:24 15 Q. So let's just make sure you're speaking into
10:24 16 the microphone. Let's move it up a little bit, I
10:24 17 think, and then maybe you can scoot right up to it.

10:24 18 A. I have a soft voice.

10:24 19 Q. Can you say your name again just so we can
10:24 20 test the --

10:24 21 A. It's William Wing Yen Chu. Wing spells
10:24 22 W-i-n-g. Yen spells Y-e-n.

10:24 23 MR. COLLARD: Kristie, are we doing okay?

24 BY MR. COLLARD:

10:24 25 Q. Okay. That middle name, is that a Chinese

10:24 1 name, sir?

10:24 2 A. Yes, sir.

10:24 3 Q. Does it have a meaning in English?

10:24 4 A. Yes. It does. It means "forever kind."

10:25 5 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

10:25 6 Where do you currently live?

10:25 7 A. I live in Los Altos, California, in the
10:25 8 Silicon Valley.

10:25 9 Q. And how long have you lived in Silicon Valley,
10:25 10 sir?

10:25 11 A. Probably over 50 years.

10:25 12 Q. And are you married?

10:25 13 A. Yes.

10:25 14 Q. What's your wife's name?

10:25 15 A. Teresa Chu.

10:25 16 Q. And where did you meet Teresa?

10:25 17 A. I met her at University of California
10:25 18 Berkeley.

10:25 19 Q. What was she studying when you met her at the
10:25 20 University of California Berkeley?

10:25 21 A. She was getting a business degree.

10:25 22 Q. And so does she have any university degrees?

10:25 23 A. Yeah. She got her business degree from UC
10:25 24 Berkeley, and then she got an MBA from University of
10:25 25 Illinois Urbana.

10:25 1 Q. And what does she do today, your wife, Teresa
10:25 2 Chu?

10:25 3 A. She work for ACQIS in handling the accounting
10:26 4 and finance.

10:26 5 Q. And is she also a part owner of ACQIS?

10:26 6 A. Yes.

10:26 7 Q. And then I recall you and Teresa have two
10:26 8 kids; is that right?

10:26 9 A. Two daughters, yes.

10:26 10 Q. And is it Tiffany and Amanda?

10:26 11 A. Yes.

10:26 12 Q. What does Tiffany do for a living, Dr. Chu?

10:26 13 A. My older daughter Tiffany lives in San
10:26 14 Francisco. She is a finance director at a company, and
10:26 15 the company provides free financial advice to
10:26 16 consumers.

10:26 17 Q. And what about Amanda, what does Amanda do for
10:26 18 a living?

10:26 19 A. Amanda is my younger daughter. She lives in
10:26 20 New York. She is an OB/GYN surgeon, and she helps
10:26 21 patients that suffer from very severe endometriosis.

10:26 22 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu. I appreciate you sharing
10:26 23 about your family. And I'd like to talk a little bit
10:26 24 about your personal background.

10:26 25 Where were you born?

10:27 1 A. I was born in Shanghai, China.

10:27 2 Q. And did you grow up there?

10:27 3 A. No.

10:27 4 Q. Where did you grow up?

10:27 5 A. We fled -- the family fled communism. I left
10:27 6 China when I was four years old and went to Hong Kong.

10:27 7 Q. Hong Kong.

10:27 8 Can you explain to the jury, why did it help
10:27 9 at that time to move to Hong Kong, which is now a part
10:27 10 of China?

10:27 11 A. Well, at the time when I was there, Hong Kong
10:27 12 was a British colony. So of course, it's not a
10:27 13 communist place and...

10:27 14 Q. Did you become a British citizen when you
10:27 15 moved to Hong Kong?

10:27 16 A. No. I was subject to a colony, so I'm not a
10:27 17 citizen.

10:27 18 Q. What schools did you attend as a boy in Hong
10:27 19 Kong?

10:27 20 A. I attended a Jesuit high school, Wah Yan, for
10:27 21 my high school. Yes.

10:27 22 Q. All right. And did you have brothers and
10:27 23 sisters?

10:27 24 A. Yes. I do.

10:27 25 Q. All right.

10:28 1 MR. COLLARD: Let's take a look at
10:28 2 Demonstrative Exhibit PDX-2.1.

3 BY MR. COLLARD:

10:28 4 Q. Is this a picture of your family, Dr. Chu?

10:28 5 A. Yes. Long time ago.

10:28 6 Q. All right. Which one are you?

10:28 7 A. I'm the chubby one in the middle.

10:28 8 Q. And then for your siblings in this picture,
10:28 9 can you briefly tell the jury their names and what they
10:28 10 do and perhaps where they live?

10:28 11 A. On my left is my older brother Tom. He lives
10:28 12 in the Los Angeles area. He was -- he was a
10:28 13 pharmacist. And my younger brother David, he lives in
10:28 14 Hong Kong. He was a Baptist priest. And my sister
10:28 15 Carrie, she lives in New York, and she is in real
10:28 16 estate.

10:28 17 Q. Okay. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

10:28 18 When you were a boy, did you have dreams about
10:29 19 moving to the United States?

10:29 20 A. Yes. I did.

10:29 21 Q. Why?

10:29 22 A. I love science and engineering, and U.S. has
10:29 23 the best university for science and engineering.

10:29 24 Q. And when did you come to the United States?

10:29 25 A. I came in September of 1969.

10:29 1 Q. And how old were you then?

10:29 2 A. 18.

10:29 3 Q. And how'd you feel when you came to the U.S.?

10:29 4 A. Of course this was exciting. The environment
10:29 5 is completely different, and I was pretty eager to
10:29 6 learn.

10:29 7 Q. Now, your older brother Tom, was he already in
10:29 8 the United States at that time?

10:29 9 A. He was.

10:29 10 Q. All right.

10:29 11 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at PDX-2.2.

12 BY MR. COLLARD:

10:30 13 Q. And I want to talk about this picture, so
10:30 14 we'll wait for it to come up. There we go.

10:30 15 Oh, there we go.

10:30 16 Can you tell us about -- tell the jury about
10:30 17 this picture, please.

10:30 18 A. I took this picture with my older brother Tom
10:30 19 at the Santa Clara University. It's very close to the
10:30 20 cannery that we worked at in the summer.

10:30 21 Q. So you worked at a cannery?

10:30 22 A. Yes. I did.

10:30 23 Q. How long did you work at this cannery?

10:30 24 A. I worked for three summers.

10:30 25 Q. Can you briefly describe for the jury what it

10:30 1 was like working in a cannery during the summers?

10:30 2 A. Well, it was boring. It's hard labor. And I
10:30 3 was unclogging sorting machines for peaches, and also I
10:31 4 took buckets of bad peaches to the dumpster.

10:31 5 Q. Okay. So in the -- in the fall of 1969 -- do
10:31 6 I have my timing right? And is that when you entered
10:31 7 the four-year undergraduate program in electrical
10:31 8 engineering?

10:31 9 A. At UC Berkeley. Yes.

10:31 10 Q. Okay. And so what was it like for you
10:31 11 starting college at the University of California
10:31 12 Berkeley? In that -- is that in Oakland?

10:31 13 A. No. It's in Berkeley.

10:31 14 Q. In Berkeley.

15 A. Close to Oakland.

10:31 16 Q. Close to Oakland.

10:31 17 And in 1969, what was that like?

10:31 18 A. When I went to the school, to the university,
10:31 19 there was riots there at the time. So I stay in my
10:31 20 room and study. So there's a lot to learn.

10:31 21 Q. And what is the focus of your study?

10:31 22 A. Undergrad is fairly general. You have liberal
10:31 23 arts stuff, and you have science, of course, physics --
10:32 24 there's physics, mathematics, and stuff. And of
10:32 25 course, I was electrical engineering. A lot of

10:32 1 electrical engineering courses.

10:32 2 Q. Can you describe just a little more for the
10:32 3 jury what you're studying really when you're studying
10:32 4 electrical engineering?

10:32 5 A. Pretty much everything. You study the -- how
10:32 6 they are made -- how transistors are made, how they
10:32 7 function in circuits, how you design circuits.

10:32 8 Q. Computers? Are you studying how computers
10:32 9 work?

10:32 10 A. Sure. Of course. Yes. Uh-huh.

10:32 11 Q. And did you continue to work all the way
10:32 12 through your undergraduate education?

10:32 13 A. Yes. I worked at the cannery for three
10:32 14 summers. I needed money. And I also worked at a co-op
10:32 15 to save money too.

10:32 16 Q. And how long did it take you to get your
10:32 17 bachelor's degree?

10:32 18 A. I got my bachelor in three years.

10:32 19 Q. And how did you finish this four-year program
10:33 20 in only three years?

10:33 21 A. Well, when you don't have money, I have to
10:33 22 take more courses. So I want to save money to finish
10:33 23 the four year in three years.

10:33 24 Q. Okay. What did you do after you graduated,
10:33 25 Dr. Chu?

10:33 1 A. I continue to the master program at Berkeley.

10:33 2 Q. And what did you study in your master's
10:33 3 program at Berkeley?

10:33 4 A. Integrated circuits.

10:33 5 Q. Can you tell the jury, what is an integrated
10:33 6 circuit?

10:33 7 A. It's what I said, that you take a large number
10:33 8 of transistors and design it and put it on a piece of
10:33 9 silicon for computer use.

10:33 10 Q. And how did you pay for graduate school?

10:33 11 A. I was a teaching assistant, and also I got a
10:33 12 scholarship.

10:33 13 Q. Who -- let's talk about the teaching assistant
10:33 14 part.

10:33 15 Who were you teaching?

10:33 16 A. Undergraduate students.

10:34 17 Q. Undergrad students at Berkeley?

10:34 18 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

10:34 19 Q. And then was that scholarship based on merit?

10:34 20 A. Yes.

10:34 21 Q. And did you receive a master's degree at the
10:34 22 end of that program?

10:34 23 A. Yeah, in two years.

10:34 24 Q. And did you immediately after that continue on
10:34 25 to pursue your doctorate?

10:34 1 A. Yes. Yes. I did.

10:34 2 Q. And where did you do your doctoral research?

10:34 3 A. UC Berkeley has a fairly unique program. They
10:34 4 partner with the industry to -- for certain doctorate
10:34 5 degrees, and I joined that program. So I went to Bell
10:34 6 Labs in New Jersey to do my research.

10:34 7 Q. Can you tell the jury a little bit about Bell
10:34 8 Labs, please, and what that is?

10:34 9 A. At the time it was a really renowned research
10:34 10 lab, very large one, that was -- basically belongs to
10:34 11 the Bell Telephone systems.

10:34 12 Q. And was it exciting to be able to do research
10:34 13 there at Bell Labs?

10:35 14 A. Yeah. It was fun.

10:35 15 Q. Can you briefly describe the type of research
10:35 16 that you did while you were at Bell Labs?

10:35 17 A. I was designing and building a special device.
10:35 18 It's called high voltage DMOS driver circuit for plasma
10:35 19 panels.

10:35 20 Q. Did that research have any applicability in
10:35 21 the future?

10:35 22 A. It actually was commercialized, and it became
10:35 23 like plasma TVs and displays.

10:35 24 MR. COLLARD: Let's take a look at
10:35 25 PDX-2.3, please.

10:35 1 Thank you.

10:35 2 BY MR. COLLARD:

10:35 3 Q. What is in this picture?

10:35 4 A. My advisor, I guess, awarded me my doctorate
10:35 5 degree.

10:35 6 Q. This is you getting your doctorate?

10:35 7 A. Yes.

10:35 8 Q. How old were you here?

10:35 9 A. I think I was 25.

10:35 10 Q. 25. Thank you.

10:35 11 So you mentioned you were not a British
10:35 12 citizen when you grew up in Hong Kong.

10:35 13 Were you a citizen of any country?

10:36 14 A. No. I was not.

10:36 15 Q. Did you want to become a citizen of the United
10:36 16 States?

10:36 17 A. Yes. Very much.

10:36 18 Q. Why?

10:36 19 A. Well, many reasons. I mean, I -- I obviously
10:36 20 believe in democracy. I know in this country, you have
10:36 21 freedom. You have justice. Justice to protect
10:36 22 yourself. So -- and I didn't belong anywhere, so I
10:36 23 want to belong here.

10:36 24 Q. Did that happen? Did you become a U.S.
10:36 25 citizen?

10:36 1 A. Yes. I did.

10:36 2 Q. Approximately when did that happen, Dr. Chu?

10:36 3 A. I think it's 1984.

10:36 4 Q. Could you briefly share with us what you
10:36 5 remember about the day you finally became a U.S.
10:36 6 citizen in 1984?

10:36 7 A. Well, as I said, I finally belong somewhere,
10:36 8 and it's a wonderful place to build my family. I
10:36 9 already started my first company at the time. I
10:36 10 started my first company in 1982. So this would be a
10:37 11 wonderful place for me to build my business and career.

10:37 12 Q. Dr. Chu, we're actually going to get into your
10:37 13 work history here in a second, but before I do that,
10:37 14 how do you spend your time today?

10:37 15 A. I spend my time between ACQIS and my
10:37 16 nonprofit.

10:37 17 Q. And what is your nonprofit?

10:37 18 A. The name of my nonprofit is called Hearts to
10:37 19 Humanity Eternal. Our mission is to build a lasting
10:37 20 community of scientists and engineers who cares about
10:37 21 humanity and who do research to advance humanity.

10:37 22 Q. And who does your nonprofit support?

10:37 23 A. We provide research grants to UC Berkeley,
10:37 24 mostly graduate students, and we support a large number
10:37 25 of community activities among these student

10:37 1 researchers.

10:37 2 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

10:37 3 Now, I do want to turn and talk a little bit
10:37 4 about your work history, and we'll just kind of focus
10:37 5 on some key jobs in your work history. Okay?

10:38 6 A. Okay.

10:38 7 Q. The first one is -- I want to talk about is
10:38 8 Verticom.

10:38 9 What is Verticom?

10:38 10 A. It's the first company I founded in 1982.

10:38 11 Q. And what did that company do?

10:38 12 A. We provided graphics products for the
10:38 13 computer-aided design market.

10:38 14 Q. And were you also VP of engineering at
10:38 15 Verticom?

10:38 16 A. Yes. I was.

10:38 17 Q. Did Verticom go public?

10:38 18 A. It went public in 1986.

10:38 19 Q. And can you explain to the jury just briefly
10:38 20 what it means to go public?

10:38 21 A. We were listed on NASDAQ so that we can raise
10:38 22 funds from the public.

10:38 23 Q. Is being listed on the NASDAQ Stock Exchange
10:38 24 and going public, is that a marker of success for a
10:38 25 company?

10:38 1 A. Yes. I guess so. I guess.

10:38 2 Q. And what happened to Verticom?

10:38 3 A. We were acquired two years later by a company
10:38 4 called Western Digital.

10:38 5 Q. When that happened, did you also join Western
10:39 6 Digital?

10:39 7 A. Yes.

10:39 8 Q. And what was your position?

10:39 9 A. I was VP of engineering for the whole graphics
10:39 10 division.

10:39 11 Q. Okay. And was Western Digital, at that time,
10:39 12 was it a large company?

10:39 13 A. It was a Fortune 500 company. Yes.

10:39 14 Q. And what type of products did Western Digital
10:39 15 offer?

10:39 16 A. They built all kinds of computer products in
10:39 17 the storage area, in communication, in audio, and in my
10:39 18 division, the graphics products.

10:39 19 Q. You talked about your division.

10:39 20 Did you manage a team while you were at
10:39 21 Western Digital?

10:39 22 A. Yes.

10:39 23 Q. How many -- how big was your team?

10:39 24 A. My team, I had about 150 engineers.

10:39 25 Q. Okay. And what -- what was your role as

10:39 1 manager of those engineers?

10:39 2 A. Well, of course I have to manage the teams. I
10:39 3 decided what product to build, and I talked to
10:40 4 customers.

10:40 5 Q. And were any of the products that you oversaw
10:40 6 during your time at Western Digital, were any of those
10:40 7 successful?

10:40 8 A. Yeah. We had two products in particular. We
10:40 9 launched the first Microsoft Window -- we call it
10:40 10 accelerated chip, graphics chip, so that we can take
10:40 11 full advantage of speed for Microsoft Window. That's
10:40 12 in the desktop chip area.

10:40 13 And we were the first one to launch in the
10:40 14 laptop product a chip that integrated back an analog
10:40 15 circuitry into the same chip. Doesn't sound like too
10:40 16 much, but nobody was able to do that and we were able
10:40 17 to do that.

10:40 18 Q. Did you leave Western Digital?

10:40 19 A. Yes.

10:40 20 Q. And where did you go next?

10:40 21 A. I went to company called AcuMOS.

10:40 22 Q. And what type of job did you do at AcuMOS?

10:40 23 A. I was also the VP of engineering.

10:40 24 Q. And then was AcuMOS acquired by another
10:40 25 company?

10:40 1 A. It was acquired by Cirrus Logic.

10:41 2 Q. And did you go to work for Cirrus Logic?

10:41 3 A. Yes. I did.

10:41 4 Q. Is Cirrus Logic a large company?

10:41 5 A. Not as large as Western Digital, but was quite
10:41 6 large. It's hundreds of millions of dollars in
10:41 7 revenue. Yeah.

10:41 8 Q. Okay. And what was your role at Cirrus Logic?

10:41 9 A. I was the general manager for the desktop
10:41 10 graphics division.

10:41 11 Q. And so how many people were you managing at
10:41 12 Cirrus Logic?

10:41 13 A. At the peak, I had actually about 300
10:41 14 engineers.

10:41 15 Q. And what kind of work were you doing there?

10:41 16 A. Same work, managing the teams, deciding what
10:41 17 product to build, and also talking to customers.

10:41 18 Q. So I want to dig into a little more about your
10:41 19 work at Cirrus Logic in the 1990s.

10:41 20 THE COURT: This seems like a good
10:41 21 transition.

10:41 22 Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we're
10:41 23 going to take our morning recess. We'll take a recess
10:41 24 in the morning and a recess in the afternoon, and of
10:42 25 course we'll get a lunch break.

10:42 1 I'll have a couple of instructions for
10:42 2 you while we are not together and while you're with the
10:42 3 other jurors or when you go home.

10:42 4 First is: You are not permitted to talk
10:42 5 about anything you've heard during the case until the
10:42 6 end of the trial when you begin your deliberations.

10:42 7 So I've never served on a jury. I don't
10:42 8 know what it is y'all talk about back there. You're
10:42 9 welcome -- one of the jurors has a nice cowboy hat.
10:42 10 You're obviously -- that's fair game or anything else,
10:42 11 but please don't talk about anything during the trial.

10:42 12 Second is: Please, if you are on social
10:42 13 media, whatever that is, I don't -- I'm not, but please
10:42 14 don't post anything about the trial while you are
10:42 15 serving as a juror.

10:42 16 And finally, please do not do any
10:42 17 independent research about anything that might happen
10:42 18 during the trial. The lawyers have worked very hard to
10:42 19 prepare the case and to present the evidence that they
10:43 20 intend to have you consider. Please don't do any
10:43 21 additional research about the parties or the lawyers or
10:43 22 anything else.

10:43 23 Going forward I'll just say, please
10:43 24 remember my instructions. Those are the instructions.
10:43 25 So we'll be in recess for 10 or 15 minutes.

10:43 1 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

10:43 2 (Jury exited the courtroom.)

10:43 3 THE COURT: You may step down, sir.

10:43 4 You may be seated.

10:43 5 Is there anything we need to take up?

10:43 6 MR. COLLARD: Very briefly, Your Honor.

10:43 7 I'm concerned that the opening statement,

10:43 8 and this may come up again, is -- violated Motion in

10:44 9 Limine No. 7. I, of course, didn't want to object

10:44 10 during the statement.

10:44 11 But argument suggesting there's anything

10:44 12 legally improper in filing a patent application or

10:44 13 writing patent claims to cover an adverse party's

10:44 14 product was said explicitly by Mr. Buresh. My notes

10:44 15 were that: You don't get to look back at their work

10:44 16 and claim that.

10:44 17 And that is exactly what's prohibited by

10:44 18 Motion in Limine No. 7.

10:44 19 THE COURT: Counsel?

10:44 20 MR. BURESH: Your Honor, we're making a

10:44 21 written description and enablement defense. All my

10:44 22 argument was going toward is the notion that you can't

10:44 23 move the fence post as you move forward.

10:44 24 THE COURT: Well, I think you need to be

10:44 25 more careful. I agree with counsel that you should not

10:44 1 be intimating anything that indicates that -- for
10:44 2 example, that he, during the prosecution process, did
10:44 3 anything improper by -- anything improper. I'll limit
10:45 4 it to that, whatever that might be.

10:45 5 And so I don't know that that statement
10:45 6 does much to support your defenses, and so I would be
10:45 7 more careful going forward.

10:45 8 MR. BURESH: Understood, Your Honor.

10:45 9 THE COURT: Anything else?

10:45 10 MR. COLLARD: That was all, Your Honor.
10:45 11 Thank you.

10:45 12 THE COURT: Who comes after -- what
10:45 13 witness will be next?

10:45 14 MR. COLLARD: It's our infringement
10:45 15 expert, Dr. Sarhan.

10:45 16 THE COURT: Okay. So we'll go from
10:45 17 him -- and -- so I have a phone call I have to take at
10:45 18 1:00. My plan is to go a little bit past noon, and
10:45 19 then break when we break. And we'll see when we get to
10:45 20 about that time, what we may do is just have you
10:45 21 introduce your expert, prove him up, and then break at
10:45 22 that point. But we'll figure it out.

10:45 23 How --

10:45 24 MR. COLLARD: I'm sorry. I'm going to
10:45 25 really try to get done with Dr. Chu before lunch, a

10:45 1 little after noon, but I'm not sure --

10:46 2 THE COURT: Oh, no. I thought you were
10:46 3 going to get done. So if he's going to go through
10:46 4 noon, we'll -- if it helps you, we'll go till maybe
10:46 5 12:30 then.

10:46 6 MR. COLLARD: Okay.

10:46 7 THE COURT: And not -- I'm not pushing
10:46 8 you. I don't care how he's presented. I just want to
10:46 9 make sure that the jury isn't sitting around too long
10:46 10 waiting for us.

10:46 11 And if I haven't told you all, I know you
10:46 12 all's -- the folks you've hired who are from here I'm
10:46 13 sure have told you this, but to make clear if you don't
10:46 14 know, as long as a witness is on direct, you may speak
10:46 15 to the witness.

10:46 16 Once the witness is on cross, then you
10:46 17 may not with one exception per side or I think maybe
10:46 18 two on the defense side per side, which is: You have
10:46 19 your client; they have the two clients. And I don't
10:46 20 know if your two clients are going to be testifying or
10:46 21 not. So doesn't matter --

10:46 22 MR. BURESH: They will be, Your Honor.

10:46 23 THE COURT: They will be? Both?

10:46 24 Okay. So regardless of when they are
10:47 25 testifying, you can still talk to them. Otherwise, the

10:47 1 rule about direct and cross applies.

10:47 2 So anything else?

10:47 3 MR. COLLARD: Nothing from us, Your

10:47 4 Honor.

10:47 5 THE COURT: Okay.

10:47 6 (Recess taken.)

11:00 7 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

11:00 8 THE COURT: Please remain standing for
11:00 9 the jury.

11:00 10 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I have a brief
11:00 11 issue, very brief, before we bring the jury in. I'm
11:00 12 sorry.

11:00 13 THE COURT: Yes, sir.

11:00 14 MR. COLLARD: You said that you would pay
11:00 15 attention to and revisit potentially the paragraph that
11:00 16 we had to redact out of the notice letter on the IBM
11:00 17 litigation.

11:00 18 THE COURT: Yes.

11:00 19 MR. COLLARD: In my notes from the
11:00 20 opening, it was Mr. Buresh saying that: Dr. Chu sued
11:00 21 everyone under the sun.

11:00 22 It seems like if he can say that, that I
11:00 23 shouldn't have to take out the --

11:00 24 THE COURT: No. No. I'm not going to --
11:00 25 I -- it's very -- it's a very high hill for you to

11:00 1 climb to allow any other lawsuit in here.

11:00 2 MR. COLLARD: Understood.

11:00 3 THE COURT: So I'm not going to permit
11:00 4 that.

11:00 5 MR. COLLARD: That's all. Thank you,
11:00 6 sir.

11:01 7 (Jury entered the courtroom.)

11:01 8 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be
11:01 9 seated.

11:01 10 Counsel, you may continue, please.

11:01 11 MR. COLLARD: Thank you, Your Honor.

11:01 12 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:01 13 Q. Dr. Chu, to kind of put everybody back on the
11:01 14 timeline, we have been talking about your work history.
11:01 15 We were talking about your work at Cirrus in the 1990s,
11:01 16 and I want to dig in a little more into your work that
11:01 17 you were -- what you were doing at Cirrus in the 1990s.

11:01 18 Is that okay?

11:01 19 A. Yes.

11:01 20 Q. Great.

11:01 21 Was the increasing speeds of computers
11:01 22 something that you had to monitor while you were
11:01 23 working at Cirrus?

11:01 24 A. Yes.

11:01 25 Q. Why?

11:01 1 A. Computer rate is getting faster every year,
11:02 2 because that's what consumer wants, and companies
11:02 3 dealing with faster processor after each generation.
11:02 4 So the graphics device has to keep up with that.

11:02 5 Q. So was part of your job at Cirrus making sure
11:02 6 that the products that Cirrus was making would keep up
11:02 7 as computers get faster?

11:02 8 A. Yes. The graphics chip that we built has to
11:02 9 interface to the processor. So as that interface gets
11:02 10 faster, we have to get faster.

11:02 11 Q. And can you explain to the jury sort of why
11:02 12 are computers always getting faster?

11:02 13 A. Very few people want to buy slow computer, so
11:02 14 everybody wants to buy faster computer. And Intel
11:02 15 every year comes out with faster computers and faster
11:02 16 logic. So we have to keep up.

11:02 17 Q. Is that the processor?

11:02 18 A. The processor is the brain of the computer.

11:03 19 Q. Okay. And are there other parts inside of the
11:03 20 computer that communicate with that processor, that
11:03 21 brain?

11:03 22 A. Yeah. You will have the brain, and you will
11:03 23 have, you know, memory. You will have storage devices.
11:03 24 You will have audio, communication devices, of course
11:03 25 graphics, audio device, all surrounding the processor.

11:03 1 Q. Okay. Now, how are those devices, those
11:03 2 components that you just mentioned, what connects them
11:03 3 to the processor?

11:03 4 A. Through a computer bus.

11:03 5 Q. Computer bus. Great.

11:03 6 Now, this is where I'm hoping you can help the
11:03 7 jury start to understand this.

11:03 8 What is a computer bus?

11:03 9 A. Kind of briefly mentioned that. It's
11:03 10 basically wires on the circuit board mostly, and you
11:03 11 will have what we call interface drivers on each side.
11:03 12 They're pretty much controllers that control the flow
11:04 13 of information between the devices.

11:04 14 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:04 15 And I just want to ask this one too: Is a
11:04 16 computer bus, is it inside the computer or outside the
11:04 17 computer?

11:04 18 A. There are buses inside, but there are also
11:04 19 buses that goes to connectors in a computer, like USB,
11:04 20 so you will go to external components. Both types are
11:04 21 out there.

11:04 22 Q. Both types. Thank you.

11:04 23 Do you have a comparison that can help us
11:04 24 think about a computer bus?

11:04 25 A. Yes. Kind of. But you are -- computer bus is

11:04 1 like roads depending on the arrangement. It could --
11:04 2 that could connect the people between buildings and
11:04 3 things.

11:04 4 Q. Okay. And were there different types of
11:04 5 computer buses that were being used around this time?

11:04 6 And on the timeline, we're still in the 1990s.

11:05 7 So were there different types of computer
11:05 8 buses being used around then?

11:05 9 A. Quite a few. Yes. Uh-huh.

11:05 10 Q. What is PCI?

11:05 11 A. PCI stands for Peripheral Component
11:05 12 Interconnect. It's a type of bus that the -- the
11:05 13 graphics device also interface to but also other
11:05 14 devices. It's one of the main primary bus for
11:05 15 communicating the internal peripheral device to the
11:05 16 processor.

11:05 17 Q. And what about USB? Was that one of the buses
11:05 18 that was being used in the 1990s?

11:05 19 A. At the time of my invention, it was a very
11:05 20 slow bus. People probably use it for maybe keyboard
11:05 21 and mouse. Not too much.

11:05 22 Q. Okay. We mentioned two specific types, and we
11:05 23 don't have to go into all the other types, but I want
11:05 24 to know, were there other types of buses that were
11:05 25 being used in the 1990s?

11:05 1 A. Yeah. There was some more advanced buses. We
11:05 2 call it 3094 or there's some ISA bus. So it's -- there
11:06 3 are quite a few. Yes.

11:06 4 Q. Okay. So we're talking about computer buses
11:06 5 now.

11:06 6 Does the computer bus have to improve to keep
11:06 7 up with faster processors?

11:06 8 A. Yes. You have to.

11:06 9 Q. What if it doesn't?

11:06 10 A. Well, if it doesn't, then you will -- the
11:06 11 information cannot flow. If the processor runs faster,
11:06 12 it can process more information. So you need to talk
11:06 13 to the rest of the system. So you'll get -- you know,
11:06 14 like in the intersection, you get roadblocks, and then
11:06 15 a computer basically cannot do anything. So you will
11:06 16 not be able to fully take advantage of the speed of the
11:06 17 processor.

11:06 18 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:06 19 Now, we'll go a little bit back into your work
11:06 20 history.

11:06 21 You decided to leave Cirrus Logic when?

11:06 22 A. Around November of 1997.

11:06 23 Q. Why did you decide to leave Cirrus?

11:06 24 A. Cirrus decided to get out of the graphics
11:07 25 business.

11:07 1 Q. Was its graphics business doing poorly?

11:07 2 A. Not at that time.

11:07 3 Q. Then why did Cirrus decide to get out of the
11:07 4 graphics business?

11:07 5 A. Intel is a monopoly on most with the
11:07 6 processor, and they also control what we call the
11:07 7 "system logic." The system logic, we can only at the
11:07 8 time mostly buy from Intel. So they decided to take
11:07 9 the graphics device and put it inside the system logic.

11:07 10 So when you do that, you basically cannot
11:07 11 compete in that business. So it is not -- wasn't my
11:07 12 decision to -- Cirrus Logic said, you know, we can't
11:07 13 compete in this situation, so we have to get off of the
11:07 14 business.

11:07 15 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:07 16 So after you left Cirrus in late 1997, what
11:07 17 did you do professionally?

11:07 18 A. I took a small break. My mother was here in
11:07 19 U.S. to treat her cancer, so I took a break. And after
11:08 20 that, around Christmas of 1997, I decided to start
11:08 21 working on my invention.

11:08 22 Q. Okay. And are you referring to the inventions
11:08 23 that ultimately, somewhere down the road, are in the
11:08 24 patents that were awarded to you by the U.S. Patent
11:08 25 Office?

11:08 1 A. Yes.

11:08 2 Q. Okay. So we'll come back to the patents, but
11:08 3 I want to be clear on the timing.

11:08 4 When was this that you started work on your
11:08 5 inventions?

11:08 6 A. Well, I started around Christmas 1997.

11:08 7 Q. And what was -- can you tell the jury a little
11:08 8 bit about what computing and computers were like back
11:08 9 in the very end of 1997 and the beginning of 1998?

11:08 10 A. At the time I saw the problem in that
11:08 11 computers were large and not very portable. The laptop
11:08 12 in those days weighed about 6 pounds. And so I was
11:09 13 trying to solve a problem to help consumer deal with
11:09 14 mobile -- to get that more mobility of the computer.

11:09 15 Q. Were computers in 1998 as fast as they are
11:09 16 now?

11:09 17 A. No. Of course not.

11:09 18 Q. Okay. Were they as portable as they are now?

11:09 19 A. No. They were not.

11:09 20 Q. Were computers -- what was the Internet like
11:09 21 in 1998?

11:09 22 A. If you're lucky to get one; otherwise, you
11:09 23 don't have it. It's slow.

11:09 24 Q. So let's talk about your work on the
11:09 25 inventions.

11:09 1 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit J-22, J-23,
11:09 2 and J-24, which are the white papers.

11:09 3 MR. BURESH: No objection.

11:09 4 THE COURT: Admitted.

11:09 5 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:09 6 Q. Did you make a record of your inventions that
11:09 7 you worked on around that time?

11:09 8 A. Yes. I sat down and really dedicate all my
11:09 9 time to detail -- to do a detail description of my
11:09 10 invention. I wrote basically three white papers to do
11:10 11 that.

11:10 12 Q. So what are white papers?

11:10 13 A. It just -- it's the way that you have a
11:10 14 detailed documentation of something. We just call it
11:10 15 "white paper."

11:10 16 Q. Okay. And when did you write these white
11:10 17 papers?

11:10 18 A. Between Christmas of 1997 to about middle of
11:10 19 January of 1998.

11:10 20 Q. All right. And we're going to look at them
11:10 21 more closely here in a minute, but before we do that,
11:10 22 can you please name how you see the invention or
11:10 23 inventions in these white papers?

11:10 24 A. There were two key inventions. There -- we
11:10 25 talked about the modular computer invention. At the

11:10 1 time I thought it was, you know, very unique. But in
11:10 2 order to implement that, I have to create a new
11:10 3 computer bus.

11:10 4 Q. So were those the two inventions, the new
11:10 5 modular computer and a new computer bus?

11:10 6 A. Yeah. Those were the primary invention.
11:10 7 Correct.

11:10 8 Q. Let's take it one at a time.

11:10 9 Can you please explain to the jury the modular
11:11 10 computer systems that you described in your white
11:11 11 papers?

11:11 12 A. This was a long time ago, 24 years ago. We --
11:11 13 we tried to put everything that's important in the --
11:11 14 for computer, the processor, the storage, the memory,
11:11 15 the graphics, the communication device, all in a single
11:11 16 box that's really small. This weighs about a pound in
11:11 17 those days. And so --

11:11 18 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu. We're going to come back,
11:11 19 and we'll actually look at those quite a bit.

11:11 20 A. Okay.

11:11 21 Q. But for now, I want to stick to the white
11:11 22 papers.

11:11 23 And so what sort of problems did you hope to
11:11 24 solve with a new modular computer system?

11:11 25 A. Two problems. One was to -- as I said, to

11:11 1 build the actual modular computer to help consumer
11:11 2 having a more affordable system. The -- in order to
11:11 3 implement this computer system --

11:12 4 Q. Well, hold on. Let's do this one at a time.
11:12 5 So now I do want to talk about the computer
11:12 6 bus.

11:12 7 Why did you invent a new computer bus in these
11:12 8 white papers?

11:12 9 A. To build a computer module for multiple
11:12 10 generations. The interconnect between the computer and
11:12 11 the consoles really cannot change. So we want -- I
11:12 12 wanted to build what I call a universal bus. I want to
11:12 13 build a universal bus that when the inside of the
11:12 14 computer, as we said, gets faster and faster, as we all
11:12 15 know it will happen, we don't have to change that bus.
11:12 16 We'll be able to send the data for a current generation
11:12 17 of bus or to later generation of bus, go through this
11:12 18 high-speed universal bus so that the system will be
11:12 19 future-proof.

11:12 20 Q. Okay. So do all three of the white papers
11:12 21 describe parts of the new bus that you were designing?

11:12 22 A. Yes.

11:12 23 Q. Great.

11:12 24 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at the front
11:13 25 cover of J-22. And let's blow up the title in the top

11:13 1 bit, please.

2 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:13 3 Q. And what is this document?

11:13 4 A. It was my first white paper talking mostly
11:13 5 about the modular computer console.

11:13 6 Q. All right. And I want to look in this white
11:13 7 paper -- oh. And sorry. I just want to point out --
11:13 8 is this -- up here on the top left, is that the date
11:13 9 that you finished this -- drafting this white paper?

11:13 10 A. Yes. That's the day I finish.

11:13 11 Q. Okay.

11:13 12 MR. COLLARD: And let's look at Page 15
11:13 13 of this document. It's Figure 5.

11:13 14 And we'll blow up the image here, please.

11:13 15 Thank you.

11:13 16 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:13 17 Q. What does this show, Dr. Chu?

11:13 18 A. So I talked earlier about I want to build a
11:13 19 universal bus that's high performance. I named that
11:14 20 the XP Bus. So I mentioned earlier that I wanted that
11:14 21 bus not to change regardless of what's happening with
11:14 22 the PC technology at the time.

11:14 23 So there are many types of peripheral bus. I
11:14 24 name here the PCI bus, the USB bus. ALink is also a
11:14 25 bus. LPC was also a bus. 1394 is potentially also a

11:14 1 bus.

11:14 2 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:14 3 And what technology did you suggest to create
11:14 4 or implement your new computer bus at a high level?

11:14 5 A. I use a existing technology that was fairly
11:14 6 new at the time. It's called a "low voltage
11:14 7 differential signal" technology. It's short for LVDS.
11:14 8 I chose to use that technology.

11:14 9 Q. Let's look at that. Let's look at a different
11:14 10 white paper. It's J-23. And let's just look at the
11:15 11 cover first before we -- and get the date on this.

11:15 12 So the title of this is Two separate PCI or
11:15 13 PCI-like Busses Bridged by a pair of Interface Devices
11:15 14 through a High Speed Bus.

11:15 15 And is this date in the corner, January 15th,
11:15 16 1998, is that the date that you finished drafting this?

11:15 17 A. Yes. It was.

11:15 18 Q. Okay. So I want to now go to Page 5 of this
11:15 19 document, and we're going to look at Paragraph 1,
11:15 20 Summary of the invention.

11:15 21 MR. COLLARD: And I want to call out the
11:15 22 last line, please.

23 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:15 24 Q. Is this one of the places in your white paper
11:15 25 where you describe the technology of the new bus?

11:15 1 A. Yes. As I mentioned earlier, I use a new
11:15 2 technology here at the time called LVDS, differential
11:16 3 signal pair, to use as the connection for my bus.

11:16 4 Q. So let's start talking about the LVDS
11:16 5 technology.

11:16 6 Can we start with the LV? What does that
11:16 7 stand for?

11:16 8 A. It stands for low voltage.

11:16 9 Q. Okay. And why is low voltage -- I'm sorry.

11:16 10 Was having low voltage important to the design
11:16 11 of your computer bus?

11:16 12 A. It was very important.

11:16 13 Q. Can you --

11:16 14 A. In 1998, the typical bus, like PCI bus was
11:16 15 using 3 volt to 5 volt for signal. The signal that I
11:16 16 can use with this LVDS technology was around .4 volts.
11:16 17 So when you consider the speed of the signal, if you
11:16 18 have to charge a wire up to 3 volts or 5 volts, it
11:17 19 takes a much longer time. So with .4 volt, you spend
11:17 20 much less time bring the signal up. So it's much
11:17 21 faster.

11:17 22 Q. So it was much faster.

11:17 23 Did it have any changes in how much power was
11:17 24 used by the bus?

11:17 25 A. A huge amount, because power is calculated by

11:17 1 the square of the voltage. So if it's 5 volts, if you
11:17 2 square, it's 25 -- it's put at the 25 unit. But when
11:17 3 you square a .4-volt signal, it's only .16. So you're
11:17 4 talking about almost 100 times reduction in power.

11:17 5 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:17 6 What about -- let's talk about the DS part,
11:17 7 that differential signal.

11:17 8 Was it important to use a -- was it important
11:17 9 to you to use a differential signal in your new
11:17 10 computer bus design?

11:17 11 A. Very important.

11:17 12 Q. Why?

11:17 13 A. When you lower a voltage to .4 volts, all the
11:17 14 surrounding noise, sometimes they can get to be, you
11:18 15 know, a volt. So you will obscure the signal if you
11:18 16 don't do something about it --

11:18 17 Q. Wait. Before you go on, Dr. Chu -- I'm
11:18 18 sorry -- can you explain to the jury, please, what you
11:18 19 mean when you say "noise"?

11:18 20 A. Noise is -- any circuit that moves in your
11:18 21 computer generates electrical emission. So it's kind
11:18 22 of interference that you cannot stop because it comes
11:18 23 from every circuit. So that's electrical interference
11:18 24 that can affect your integrity of your signal.

11:18 25 Q. So can you explain to the jury how using a

11:18 1 differential signal helps with the problem of common
11:18 2 noise in the computer?

11:18 3 A. Yes. You send a signal down two wires instead
11:18 4 of one, and the way we can arrange it is such that you
11:18 5 will cancel out all the noise in that surrounding so
11:18 6 that your .4 volt will be able to be sent over those
11:19 7 wires.

11:19 8 Q. Was it common to use LVDS in a computer bus
11:19 9 when you had the idea and wrote it down in your white
11:19 10 papers?

11:19 11 A. That was my primary invention because nobody
11:19 12 else was using LVDS for computer bus at that time.

11:19 13 Q. So in addition to being LVDS, was there
11:19 14 another attribute of the type of channel that was
11:19 15 important and written down in your white papers?

11:19 16 A. Well, to gain high performance further, I use
11:19 17 this concept of, you know, dedicated lane so you can
11:19 18 send --

11:19 19 Q. Let's look in your white paper at it.
11:19 20 Is it the unidirectional part, Dr. Chu, when
11:19 21 you say a "dedicated lane"?

11:19 22 A. Yes. Unidirectional is the technical term
11:19 23 basically.

11:19 24 Q. All right. We'll take it one piece at a time
11:19 25 here.

11:19 1 MR. COLLARD: We'll go to Page 5 -- oh,
11:19 2 we're on Page 5. Sorry. We'll go to the third
11:20 3 paragraph, please.

11:20 4 And then it's the very middle of this
11:20 5 paragraph, towards the right side.

6 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:20 7 Q. It says: LVDS data transmission is only in
11:20 8 one direction at a time.

11:20 9 Is that what you were referring to about
11:20 10 dedicated lanes?

11:20 11 A. Yes.

11:20 12 Q. Was this a key attribute of your new computer
11:20 13 bus?

11:20 14 A. Yes. It gives you faster performance.

11:20 15 Q. Can you explain how it gives -- it provides --
11:20 16 how sending data in one direction at a time provides
11:20 17 faster performance?

11:20 18 A. Well, we use the analogy before. The old bus
11:20 19 was like an intersection -- a road intersection where
11:20 20 you have four-way traffic. So you have a signal light,
11:20 21 so they have to wait for the lane -- the channel to be
11:20 22 free before you can cross.

11:20 23 So by using this one direction at a time, it's
11:20 24 a bit like highway. You don't have to wait. You
11:21 25 basically can have data going north and south at the

11:21 1 same time.

11:21 2 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:21 3 I want you to talk a little bit -- well, let
11:21 4 me just ask it this way: Was the bus that you
11:21 5 designed -- the new bus that you designed in the white
11:21 6 papers, did you have it -- did you design a serial bus
11:21 7 or a parallel bus?

11:21 8 A. Serial bus.

11:21 9 Q. What was the old bus design?

11:21 10 A. It was a parallel bus.

11:21 11 Q. Can you please describe for the jury how data
11:21 12 moves on a parallel bus or in parallel transmission?

11:21 13 A. The old bus has a large number of pins, so
11:21 14 datas get sent across at the same time. And in serial
11:21 15 bus, you have much fewer wires, sometimes down to just
11:21 16 two wires. So you can go -- two pairs of wires.

11:21 17 You can go basically sequentially. The data
11:21 18 goes sequentially. I think you used the term "follow
11:21 19 the leader." So it basically goes sequentially in
11:22 20 either direction, much fewer wires.

11:22 21 Q. So follow the leader on serial.

11:22 22 And then parallel, is that sort of side by
11:22 23 side across many wires at once?

11:22 24 A. Yes.

11:22 25 Q. Thank you.

11:22 1 And why did you choose a serial design for
11:22 2 your bus when at that time the existing bus was a
11:22 3 parallel design?

11:22 4 A. Quite a few reasons. Because the less lines
11:22 5 you have, it's an easier design, and it gives you
11:22 6 ability to scale it easier. You know, if I end up
11:22 7 using 10 lines instead of 50 lines, I can add another
11:22 8 line -- another group to improve performance.

11:22 9 That's kind of -- that came with advantage of
11:22 10 using less lines.

11:22 11 Q. Did it do anything with the connectors? Did
11:22 12 it have any impact on connectors?

11:22 13 A. Yes. You know, it's -- a connector is a big
11:22 14 cost, and you want to have the smallest connector
11:22 15 possible.

11:22 16 Q. Thank you.

11:22 17 So the bus that you created with these
11:23 18 attributes, did that mean -- did your bus have a new
11:23 19 physical form?

11:23 20 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

11:23 21 Q. And then did your computer bus design preserve
11:23 22 information so that that would be compatible with
11:23 23 existing bus standards?

11:23 24 A. For us in the hardware industry, it's very
11:23 25 important to not affect the software in the system, the

11:23 1 operating system, and in the peripheral situation where
11:23 2 you have many, many kinds of peripheral you can put
11:23 3 into the system -- they are the -- like what we call
11:23 4 device drivers -- for those to communicate with the
11:23 5 operating system.

11:23 6 So you have -- it's impossible for whoever
11:23 7 doing this to affect so many companies to change your
11:23 8 software. So the only way you can do it is what we
11:23 9 call backwards compatible. You build the system, and
11:24 10 the software people doesn't need to know about it. It
11:24 11 still works.

11:24 12 Q. So that's a "yes." It was backwards
11:24 13 compatible?

11:24 14 A. Yeah. That's a lengthy yes.

11:24 15 Q. Yes. Okay.

11:24 16 And were there any specific standards that you
11:24 17 wanted to ensure that you remained backwards compatible
11:24 18 with in your bus design?

11:24 19 A. It has to because, as I said, otherwise you
11:24 20 can't sell your computer.

11:24 21 Q. Can you name any specific standards?

11:24 22 A. Oh, okay. PCI bus was one of them.

11:24 23 Q. Yes.

11:24 24 A. And USB 3.0 -- USB was one of them.

11:24 25 Q. Okay. And what kind of computer systems did

11:24 1 you envision using this computer bus in?

11:24 2 A. It's really all computers.

11:24 3 I think this may be a misunderstanding that
11:24 4 you tie the two inventions together, the modular
11:24 5 computer and the computer bus.

11:24 6 If you think about modular computer, it's
11:24 7 really just a form factor. If you plug in your
11:25 8 computer into a notebook console, that whole system is
11:25 9 a laptop computer. If you plug it into a desktop, the
11:25 10 whole system's a desktop computer.

11:25 11 So the thinking is really that -- think about
11:25 12 it like this, the computer bus is no use unless the
11:25 13 system is functional. So the only way the computer bus
11:25 14 can be valid is that when it's operating within a whole
11:25 15 computer.

11:25 16 So computer bus is not tied to the modular
11:25 17 architecture. It's tied to how the whole system works.

11:25 18 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:25 19 Could you tell the jury what you would think
11:25 20 and what you would call the top three, let's say,
11:25 21 advantages of your new computer bus over the old bus
11:25 22 technology as it existed in that time, 1998?

11:25 23 A. Well, we talk about high performance. That's
11:25 24 essential.

11:25 25 Q. Does that mean faster?

11:25 1 A. Faster. You have to be.

11:25 2 Lower power. If that doesn't happen, you
11:25 3 won't have your phone today. The power is one of the
11:26 4 most important thing.

11:26 5 And then, ultimately, it's the sense of
11:26 6 backward compatibility, the sense that you want to
11:26 7 reduce the number of errors in a system.

11:26 8 Q. Okay. What about space? Was the space one of
11:26 9 the key advantages?

11:26 10 A. Space. If your bus takes -- when you build a
11:26 11 board, there's so many traces. If you have less of
11:26 12 those wires, it's easier to build.

11:26 13 Q. Okay. So we've talked about and looked at
11:26 14 some parts of your white papers, and I want to kind of
11:26 15 talk about what happened next.

11:26 16 What did you do after you wrote your white
11:26 17 papers?

11:26 18 A. I did it specifically to give it to patent
11:26 19 attorneys to file the patents.

11:26 20 Q. And did you do that? Did you take your white
11:26 21 papers to a patent attorney?

11:26 22 A. Yes.

11:26 23 Q. And did they file patent applications?

11:26 24 A. Yes.

11:26 25 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit J-35 and

11:26 1 P-150, which are two patent applications.

11:27 2 MR. BURESH: No objection, Your Honor.

11:27 3 THE COURT: They'll be admitted.

11:27 4 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at J-35, Page 3.

11:27 5 And we'll zoom in on the top bit here.

6 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:27 7 Q. What is this document, Dr. Chu?

11:27 8 A. It's the first application the lawyers filed
11:27 9 for -- on my behalf. So it's filed on May 1st, 1998.

11:27 10 Q. Great.

11:27 11 MR. COLLARD: And then let's do the same
11:27 12 for P-150 and look at Page 3.

13 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:27 14 Q. Same question. What is this document,
11:27 15 Dr. Chu?

11:27 16 A. It's a second application filed July 14th,
11:27 17 1998.

11:27 18 Q. Thank you.

11:27 19 I would like to talk about your company ACQIS
11:27 20 Technology.

11:27 21 Was it -- well, when did you start ACQIS?

11:28 22 A. July of 1998.

11:28 23 Q. That same month we were just looking at; is
11:28 24 that right?

11:28 25 A. Yes.

11:28 1 Q. Okay.

11:28 2 MR. COLLARD: And let's look at PDX-2.5.

3 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:28 4 Q. Where'd you take this, Dr. Chu?

11:28 5 A. It was -- I was at a trade show trying to show
11:28 6 a mockup of the computer. Actually, that one didn't
11:28 7 work, so I was showing the modular function.

11:28 8 Q. Okay. When -- why did you found ACQIS
11:28 9 Technology?

11:28 10 A. First, I want to build computer systems that's
11:28 11 better for consumers, I mean, because they were buying
11:28 12 desktop, laptop. And this is alternative way of giving
11:28 13 mobility to a user.

11:28 14 So unfortunately, computer company didn't like
11:29 15 the idea because now they get to sell one computer
11:29 16 versus two. And Intel didn't like it, they could have
11:29 17 sold two CPU versus one. So it didn't -- I was not
11:29 18 accepted in the computer industry.

11:29 19 Q. Dr. Chu, was part of founding ACQIS also to
11:29 20 develop your new computer bus?

11:29 21 A. Well, you have to. When I was developing
11:29 22 this, that was something we need to do for future
11:29 23 proving the design.

11:29 24 Q. Great.

11:29 25 And then how many employees did you have at

11:29 1 ACQIS?

11:29 2 A. At the peak, we maybe have nine engine- --
11:29 3 nine employees, not engineers. Sorry.

11:29 4 Q. How many engineers then?

11:29 5 A. Maybe five.

11:29 6 Q. Is that a smaller engineering team than you
11:29 7 were used to working with at your prior jobs?

11:29 8 A. Yes. That's all I can afford at the time, and
11:29 9 I used to work with tens of engineers on our chips.

11:29 10 Q. Tens of engineers?

11:29 11 A. Yes.

11:29 12 Q. Okay. And why name the company ACQIS?

11:29 13 A. It actually is -- it's an acronym for Access
11:30 14 to Quality Information System.

11:30 15 Q. So can you describe during the time -- at your
11:30 16 time at ACQIS or the time when ACQIS was doing this
11:30 17 work, what were the ACQIS engineering efforts focused
11:30 18 on?

11:30 19 A. Well, we -- you know, it was an ambitious
11:30 20 plan. I mean, we were building whole computer system
11:30 21 and the chips -- a special chip for doing the serial
11:30 22 interface.

11:30 23 Q. So let's take those one at a time.

11:30 24 You had one team working on a chip and one
11:30 25 team working on the modular computer system?

11:30 1 A. Yeah. We have two and a half engineer on the
11:30 2 chip and two and a half engineer on the system.

11:30 3 Q. Great. Okay. Let's talk about the chip
11:30 4 first.

11:30 5 What was that -- what was their goal?

11:30 6 A. Their goal is to build what I have described
11:30 7 in my white paper and the subsequent patent to take the
11:30 8 PCI bus, which is a parallel bus, and convert it to --
11:31 9 onto the high-speed serial channel that we were --

11:31 10 Q. Okay. And when you say that one team was
11:31 11 working on the modular computer, what was -- what was
11:31 12 their goal?

11:31 13 A. The modular computer is what you kind of see
11:31 14 here because it takes a lot of work to build a new
11:31 15 computer system, enclosures, circuits, everything.

11:31 16 Q. All right. And while we're on the topic, I
11:31 17 just want to ask you: What's the relationship between
11:31 18 ACQIS Technology and ACQIS LLC?

11:31 19 A. ACQIS LLC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of
11:31 20 ACQIS Technology.

11:31 21 Q. So at this time, was ACQIS also filing
11:31 22 additional patent applications?

11:31 23 A. Yes.

11:31 24 Q. All right.

11:31 25 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit D-25, which

11:31 1 is the May '99 application.

11:31 2 MR. BURESH: No objection.

11:31 3 THE COURT: Admitted.

11:31 4 MR. COLLARD: And then let's look at
11:31 5 Exhibit D-25, please. And we can get the top part that
11:31 6 has that date.

7 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:31 8 Q. What is the -- what is this document, Dr. Chu?

11:32 9 A. At some later point, I realized that when you
11:32 10 have this -- almost a computer blank, then you can put
11:32 11 a whole array of them together into a server. So I
11:32 12 filed this early provisional to kind of capture that
11:32 13 idea.

11:32 14 Q. Great.

11:32 15 Did -- around this time, did ACQIS
11:32 16 encounter -- and where are we here, around the year
11:32 17 2000?

11:32 18 A. Well, at this time was in 2000. Yes.

11:32 19 Q. Okay. So around the year 2000, did ACQIS
11:32 20 encounter some funding trouble?

11:32 21 A. Yes. It -- actually, it was very difficult
11:32 22 for me to find funding. I got my money from my family,
11:32 23 my relatives, my friends, and some individual
11:32 24 investors. And the reason is because the big companies
11:32 25 won't adopt this concept. So I ran into a fairly tight

11:32 1 funding situation.

11:32 2 Q. And what happened at that time with respect to
11:33 3 the development of the computer system and the chip
11:33 4 that would use the serial bus?

11:33 5 A. The -- we got the chip back from Taiwan, our
11:33 6 manufacturing company. So unfortunately, the first
11:33 7 chip did not work.

11:33 8 Q. And did you have any experience in your work
11:33 9 with the first chip -- when you're designing your chip
11:33 10 with first version not working?

11:33 11 A. Yeah. That does happen. First chip doesn't
11:33 12 work, then you try to find a problem and go through
11:33 13 another -- what we call "tapeout." So you go to the
11:33 14 second chip, and sometimes you have to go to third
11:33 15 time.

11:33 16 Q. And is that something you had experience with
11:33 17 in your prior roles at Cirrus or Western Digital or
11:33 18 Verticom?

11:33 19 A. Yeah. You're going with big teams. That can
11:33 20 happen. Yes.

11:33 21 Q. Did you have a big team on this project?

11:33 22 A. A very small team.

11:33 23 Q. Okay. What about the computer system? Did
11:34 24 you complete a first generation of the modular computer
11:34 25 system?

11:34 1 A. We did. That included the chip in it because
11:34 2 that was what we were trying to build.

11:34 3 Q. The first generation did have the chip with
11:34 4 the serial?

11:34 5 A. Yes. The first generation is merely the first
11:34 6 planned product that we're building. That includes the
11:34 7 chip on this system, but when the chip didn't work,
11:34 8 what we have to do is we basically have nothing to
11:34 9 sell. So we have to take off the chip, rebuild the
11:34 10 system, and at least now we have a modular computer to
11:34 11 sell. So that was a very difficult time.

11:34 12 Q. Okay. So the first generation that you
11:34 13 actually released did not have the chip with the serial
11:34 14 bus; is that correct?

11:34 15 A. Yeah. This file doesn't really -- doesn't --
11:34 16 is not protected by my invention for the serial bus.
11:34 17 No.

11:34 18 Q. Okay. Thank you.

11:34 19 What was it called? I do want to talk about
11:34 20 that.

11:34 21 A. We call it the iMod, and the whole array of
11:35 22 console stuff we called Interputer system.

11:35 23 Q. So why don't you pick up the iMod, and please
11:35 24 explain to the jury what the iMod is.

11:35 25 A. Well, this is the outside. I can't show you

11:35 1 the inside. This is the processor we put in. This is
11:35 2 the hard drive at the time. These are the memory. It
11:35 3 has system logic chips. It has graphics chips because
11:35 4 it has to have that.

5 Q. So --

11:35 6 A. This is everything.

11:35 7 Q. To use a very technical term, Dr. Chu, is that
11:35 8 the guts of the computer?

11:35 9 A. Yes.

11:35 10 Q. Okay. And then can you please explain to us
11:35 11 how this works? And we have an Interpreter over here,
11:35 12 and I'll try and show.

11:35 13 A. Yeah. This is a desktop console. It's fairly
11:35 14 inexpensive because it doesn't have too much circuitry
11:36 15 in it. So if you open up the latch. And then you can
11:36 16 stick the computer module inside. Close the latch. So
11:36 17 that's your desktop computer.

11:36 18 And you can open the latch again, take this
11:36 19 computer module, bring it home, where if you have
11:36 20 another console like that, you just use it. It's the
11:36 21 same computer. There's no change.

11:36 22 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I request
11:36 23 permission to pass this, let the jury take a look at
11:36 24 this if they'd like?

11:36 25 THE COURT: Sure.

11:36 1 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:36 2 Q. So you mentioned that this version did not
11:36 3 have the serial bus chip.

11:36 4 Were you planning to come back to that chip
11:36 5 and use the serial bus in future versions of the
11:36 6 Interputer?

11:37 7 A. We sort of have to because as I said, this is
11:37 8 not a protected design, and it's not future-proof
11:37 9 because these are using the old buses. So if I keep
11:37 10 using this, if it becomes a very good idea, anybody can
11:37 11 use it.

11:37 12 But the serial computer bus that I created,
11:37 13 it's protected by patents and also future-proof for
11:37 14 multiple generations of these products.

11:37 15 Q. Did ACQIS need more funds to try to do a
11:37 16 second generation of the Interputer with the serial
11:37 17 bus?

11:37 18 A. Yes.

11:37 19 Q. Did ACQIS get more funds to try to do the
11:37 20 second generation of the Interputer?

11:37 21 A. I think I tap out my family and relatives and
11:37 22 friends, so they don't give me more money.

11:37 23 Q. If you had the funding and the engineers, did
11:37 24 you have any concerns about being able to successfully
11:37 25 develop and use a chip with the serial bus in the

11:38 1 second generation of the Interputer?

11:38 2 A. Absolutely.

11:38 3 Q. Absolutely you had concerns or no concerns?

11:38 4 A. I can develop a chip of this complexity
11:38 5 because I've done much more complex chips also.

11:38 6 Q. Okay. So you were not concerned about being
11:38 7 able to do that from a technical perspective?

11:38 8 A. Not technical.

11:38 9 Q. Okay. Was there industry recognition of the
11:38 10 new ACQIS product?

11:38 11 A. Yes. They like the modular aspect of this
11:38 12 design. It was unique at the time.

11:38 13 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at PD-10,
11:38 14 please. And perfect. There we go.

15 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:38 16 Q. This is WIRED Magazine.

11:38 17 And what did they say about your iMod?

11:38 18 A. It highlights the fact that this is one part.
11:39 19 We were trying to sell the system now. And so this --
11:39 20 they also list how much it cost and where you can get
21 it.

11:39 22 Q. Great.

11:39 23 MR. COLLARD: And then let's look at
11:39 24 PD-11, which I think is the PC World magazine. Great.
11:39 25 Thank you.

11:39 1 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:39 2 Q. And what did PC World say about your modular
11:39 3 computer design?

11:39 4 A. Well, the editor actually like the system,
11:39 5 so -- but they are a pretty reputable company. So they
11:39 6 said, send us the system. We need to test it, whether
11:39 7 it works or not.

11:39 8 So they did. And then it worked. So they
11:39 9 wrote it up.

11:39 10 Q. Okay. And they say in here that -- do you see
11:39 11 where they say it's "a 1-pound module slightly larger
11:39 12 than a VHS tape"?

11:39 13 That's how they described it back then.

11:39 14 A. Yeah.

11:39 15 Q. I want to talk a little bit about the chip,
11:40 16 just so -- a little more about the chip.

11:40 17 And can you explain to the jury -- do you have
11:40 18 any of the chips that you -- you were working on at
11:40 19 that time? Do you have any of those with you?

11:40 20 A. Yeah. We kept it even though it's not a
11:40 21 working chip. So these are chips that we get packaged
11:40 22 from the silicon we built.

11:40 23 Q. Make sure you stay by the microphone, Dr. Chu.

11:40 24 A. Oh, sorry.

11:40 25 Yeah. These are chips that were supposed to

11:40 1 be our interface controller to control the serial bus,
11:40 2 but it didn't work.

11:40 3 Q. Okay. And let's look at the wafer that you
11:40 4 brought with you.

11:40 5 What is a wafer?

11:40 6 A. Well, you put -- I mentioned earlier for
11:40 7 integrated circuits, you put it on a silicon wafer. I
11:40 8 have one here to show you.

11:41 9 That's a silicon wafer.

11:41 10 Q. So what is a silicon wafer?

11:41 11 A. So you print your chip a tiny square on here,
11:41 12 and then you replicate it so that on this wafer you
11:41 13 have, you know, a few -- you have a couple hundred
11:41 14 devices for cost reason, of course.

11:41 15 Q. So are there more than one -- does that item
11:41 16 get cut up?

11:41 17 A. Yes. You go to another company, they cut it
11:41 18 up, and then you won't see it, but there are pads on
11:41 19 the chip that you then bond it to the external package
11:41 20 device so that it becomes a working device.

11:41 21 Q. Okay. Were any of ACQIS' suppliers in Texas,
11:41 22 Dr. Chu?

11:41 23 A. Yes.

11:41 24 Q. Who?

11:41 25 A. A company called PS Solution. They're the

11:42 1 company to work with. They built the aluminum casing.
11:42 2 They help us design. And they also did injection mold
11:42 3 for these front and back.

11:42 4 Q. And is there any relationship with PS
11:42 5 Solutions today?

11:42 6 A. Yes. They are a shareholder.

11:42 7 Q. A shareholder?

11:42 8 A. Yes.

11:42 9 Q. Did you sell any of these iMods and
10 Interputers?

11:42 11 A. We sold mostly these small computers to --
11:42 12 couple hundred of them.

11:42 13 Q. And did ACQIS make money off of those sales?

11:42 14 A. Yes. We did.

11:42 15 Q. Did ACQIS make enough money to keep its
11:42 16 business going?

11:42 17 A. No.

11:42 18 Q. So what happened then?

11:42 19 A. I -- so, as I said, we didn't have a lot of
11:42 20 money. So we have -- I decided that we had to sell the
11:42 21 hardware business to a company called Multivision.
11:42 22 They are NVIDIA surveillance. They're one of our
11:43 23 customers. So they agreed to buy our hardware
11:43 24 business.

11:43 25 What we were very careful of was this

11:43 1 product --

11:43 2 Q. Well, so you sold the hardware business?

11:43 3 A. Yes.

11:43 4 Q. And then what?

11:43 5 A. And then I -- I was able to spend time working
11:43 6 on protecting my invention.

11:43 7 Q. Okay. So even though ACQIS didn't have enough
11:43 8 funding to continue its computer and chip business, why
11:43 9 did you continue to pursue your patents and your
11:43 10 protection of your invention?

11:43 11 A. Because that's really, in some sense, the
11:43 12 essence of the company.

11:43 13 Q. And was ACQIS awarded patents as a result of
11:43 14 those efforts?

11:43 15 A. Yes. We ultimately had about 30 patents.

11:43 16 Q. So about 30 patents total?

11:43 17 A. Yes.

11:43 18 Q. Okay. And do you remember roughly when ACQIS
11:43 19 got its first patent?

11:43 20 A. The first one was probably 2001.

11:44 21 Q. All right. Let's -- well, what are these,
11:44 22 Dr. Chu?

11:44 23 And I'm looking at --

11:44 24 MR. COLLARD: Well, let me, before I do
11:44 25 that, move to admit J-1 through 5, the patents.

11:44 1 MR. BURESH: No objection.

11:44 2 THE COURT: Admitted.

11:44 3 MR. COLLARD: Thank you.

4 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:44 5 Q. Dr. Chu, what are these that I'm holding up
11:44 6 here?

11:44 7 A. These are five of my 30 patents.

11:44 8 Q. Okay. And who put this ribbon and this seal
11:44 9 on these patents?

11:44 10 A. We received this from the U.S. Patent Office.
11:44 11 They -- this is the -- they have only one original of
11:44 12 the patent. So this is -- they put their gold seal on
11:44 13 there.

11:44 14 Q. Okay. Let's look at one.

11:44 15 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at J-1, and
11:44 16 we'll do that on the screen so we can look at some
11:44 17 parts a little more closely.

11:44 18 So let's kind of look at the top thirdish
11:45 19 of this.

20 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:45 21 Q. Who is the inventor listed on these patents?

11:45 22 A. Yeah. It's me.

11:45 23 Q. All right. So in all -- is that true for all
11:45 24 the patents? Are you a named inventor on all of the
11:45 25 patents that are asserted in this case?

11:45 1 A. It's -- I'm the only inventor.

11:45 2 Q. All right. And what is this information at
11:45 3 the top over on the right?

11:45 4 A. Once they examine your disclosure and your
11:45 5 claims, when they give you the rights to this patent,
11:45 6 they give you a unique name, a unique number. In this
11:45 7 case, it's 9,529,768.

11:45 8 And then they tell you when your patent is
11:45 9 granted, which is the date below that.

11:45 10 Q. So this date is 2016. And we're not going to
11:45 11 flip through, but all the dates on the patents are
11:46 12 from, I think, December 2013 to December 2016 for the
11:46 13 patents in this case.

11:46 14 But as we've been talking about today, we
11:46 15 talked about a lot of the work that was done, and it
11:46 16 was done in the early 2000s.

11:46 17 Can you explain why the date on these patents
11:46 18 is later even if the work we were talking about was
11:46 19 done in the early 2000s?

11:46 20 A. Yes. You know, I filed 30 patents. Each
11:46 21 patent I have to do credible work. I actually wrote
11:46 22 most of the claims in the patent.

11:46 23 So in the early days when I was writing the
11:46 24 patent, I was writing the -- I was trying to put down
11:46 25 the invention both for modular system in this case and

11:46 1 the computer bus. So it's a -- those -- most of those
11:46 2 patents has this modular aspect in the invention.

11:46 3 Then what I realized after that is that the
11:47 4 modular aspect is actually not quite too important. In
11:47 5 fact, it restricted what I can claim because basically
11:47 6 if it's not a modular computer, you really -- if your
11:47 7 claim says it's a modular computer, then you don't have
11:47 8 any rights to non-modular computer.

11:47 9 So I started a whole group of patents that
11:47 10 only focuses on the various way of using the computer
11:47 11 bus for different types of computers. So "computer"
11:47 12 would encompass really -- pretty much everything. It
11:47 13 encompass desktop, notebook, servers, smartphone, and
11:47 14 even game consoles.

11:47 15 So in order to cover that breadth of products,
11:47 16 I have to come up with all the possible configuration
11:47 17 that they can use my computer bus.

11:47 18 So these are purely -- the later patents are
11:48 19 purely focused on computer bus. It has nothing to do
11:48 20 really with the modular computer. So you will see in
11:48 21 the claims there's no word mentioned as "modular." So
11:48 22 it's a different thing. It's a separate type of
11:48 23 invention.

11:48 24 Q. Do all the inventions that are in these later
11:48 25 patents still relate back to the work that you did in

11:48 1 the late '90s and early 2000s and the white papers that
11:48 2 we looked at?

11:48 3 A. Absolutely. The Patent Office would never
11:48 4 give you a patent if you were not disclosed properly.
11:48 5 And the later patents is actually -- there's a history
11:48 6 that they are a continuation of the invention that I
11:48 7 have, so everything being traced back to the
11:48 8 provisional patent you saw that we were -- was filed in
11:48 9 1998.

11:48 10 Q. We'll go back -- we'll look at that, Dr. Chu,
11:48 11 in a second.

11:48 12 A. Okay.

11:48 13 Q. Who is the owner of the patents today?

11:49 14 A. ACQIS LLC, which is the subsidiary of ACQIS
11:49 15 Technology.

11:49 16 Q. Okay. Let's go to exactly what you were
11:49 17 saying.

11:49 18 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at Page 2.

11:49 19 At the top, it says: U.S. -- related
11:49 20 U.S. application data. Let's call that out.

11:49 21 And can we get that bottom part there
11:49 22 too, please?

11:49 23 The line -- that 60. That Line 60.

11:49 24 Perfect.

25 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:49 1 Q. What is this, Dr. Chu?

11:49 2 A. As I said, it traces the history of this
11:49 3 particular patent that was issued. And it goes back
11:49 4 to -- if you look at the bottom, it trace back to the
11:49 5 application that I filed in May 14, 1999.

11:49 6 Q. Great.

11:49 7 Now, I want to look at another part of this
11:49 8 page, Page 2. And where it says: References cited.

11:49 9 Do you see that?

11:49 10 A. Yes. Yes.

11:49 11 Q. Dr. Chu, can you describe for the jury, what
11:49 12 is prior art?

11:49 13 A. When you want to file a patent, you have to
11:50 14 tell the Patent Office everything you know prior to my
11:50 15 invention date. Meaning, anything that is published in
11:50 16 public or patents that were filed before my invention
11:50 17 date, anything we know, we have to tell the patent
11:50 18 examiner those information.

11:50 19 MR. COLLARD: So, Vicki, if you would
11:50 20 please kind of slowly flip through Pages 2 through 14?
21 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:50 22 Q. What is -- does this all show prior art that
11:50 23 you cited to -- that ACQIS cited to the Patent Office,
11:50 24 Dr. Chu?

11:50 25 A. Yes.

11:50 1 Q. Okay. And in your experience with patents, is
11:50 2 this a lot of prior art?

11:50 3 A. It's really a lot because on the first couple
11:50 4 of applications, we made -- we had less than ten prior
11:50 5 art. But because these patents has been challenged by
11:50 6 many companies, and each time they challenge them, we
11:50 7 tell the Patent Office more prior art, we have to
11:51 8 include everything into this application.

11:51 9 Q. Dr. Chu, what is the duty of candor as it
11:51 10 relates to patents? Do you know?

11:51 11 A. Well, we take it very seriously. If you know
11:51 12 about -- if you know about the prior art and you don't
11:51 13 tell the Patent Office, you loses your patent.

11:51 14 Q. I want to be clear about when in the process
11:51 15 this information was disclosed to the Patent Office.

11:51 16 Was it before the patent was issued, or was it
11:51 17 after the patent was issued?

11:51 18 A. Of course before.

11:51 19 Q. Before.

11:51 20 And so even though ACQIS disclosed all this
11:51 21 information, did the patents still issue?

11:51 22 A. Yes.

11:51 23 Q. Now, Dr. Chu, were you paying attention to
11:51 24 developments in the computer industry during the 2000s?

11:51 25 A. Yes. I was.

11:51 1 Q. Was there a shift in the computer industry
11:51 2 during the 2000s?

11:51 3 A. Yes. There was.

11:51 4 Q. Can you please describe for the jury what that
11:51 5 shift was as it related to computer buses?

11:52 6 A. I think you've heard about this standard
11:52 7 called PCI Express and USB 3.0. So when I saw the
11:52 8 standard, it uses -- before PCI was a parallel bus.
11:52 9 Now they start to use LVDS unidirectional channel for
11:52 10 transmitting PCI.

11:52 11 Q. So what was -- we'll talk about that a little
11:52 12 more.

11:52 13 For -- and was there a USB standard that was
11:52 14 adopted that you were paying attention to in the mid
11:52 15 2000s?

11:52 16 A. Yeah. It happened, I think, to ACQIS like ten
11:52 17 years after my invention. Yes.

11:52 18 Q. Okay. And I want to be clear for the jury,
11:52 19 were you involved, you personally or ACQIS, in any way
11:52 20 in the creation of the PCI Express standard or the USB
11:52 21 3.0 standard?

11:52 22 A. No. I wasn't involved. Our company wasn't
11:52 23 involved. No.

11:52 24 Q. Do you claim that you invented PCI Express or
11:53 25 USB 3.0?

11:53 1 A. No. Of course not.

11:53 2 Q. Okay. Were these buses -- did they use serial
11:53 3 communication like your bus that you designed?

11:53 4 A. Yes. The serial bus, the way I used it, yes.

11:53 5 Q. Okay. So were you aware that computer
11:53 6 companies were starting to move to these serial buses?

11:53 7 A. Yeah. Like, I think like counsel mentioned,
11:53 8 you know, there are many companies involved in creating
11:53 9 the full bus. A lot of them are licensees. Yeah.

11:53 10 Q. So here's my question about that: Do these
11:53 11 bus standards, these PCI Express and the USB 3.0, do
11:53 12 they share any common elements with the serial bus that
11:53 13 you invented?

11:53 14 A. Yes.

11:53 15 Q. Can you please tell the jury what elements --
11:54 16 what common elements that they share?

11:54 17 A. Remember when I was developing my universal
11:54 18 bus, I choose to use LVDS technology. I choose to use
11:54 19 this concept of unidirectional so the data can only --
11:54 20 can go both ways without interfering with each other.
11:54 21 That's really the fundamental concept that's being used
11:54 22 by PCI Express and USB 3.0.

11:54 23 Q. Do your patent claims, the claims in these
11:54 24 patents that we're going to talk about this week, do
11:54 25 these patent claims require everything that's required

11:54 1 by PCI Express and USB 3.0?

11:54 2 A. Not at all. I think it's misleading to say.
11:54 3 PCI Express, the standard is 200, 300 pages. It has so
11:55 4 many things to see how it works.

11:55 5 All we're claiming is that they're using LVDS
11:55 6 signaling, which I used, and the unidirectional
11:55 7 approach. That's all I'm claiming. In fact,
11:55 8 everything relies on that fact. That's the invention I
11:55 9 had.

11:55 10 But if they did not have that, if they did not
11:55 11 use that, the two standards could not exist.

11:55 12 Q. Did you contact any of the computer companies
11:55 13 that sold products that adopted these new serial bus
11:55 14 standards?

11:55 15 A. Yes.

11:55 16 Q. And why did you do that?

11:55 17 A. Given the patent rights that this has for me,
11:55 18 I'd like to talk to them about licensing.

11:55 19 Q. Okay. And I'm jumping ahead a bit here.

11:55 20 But did any of those companies actually pay
11:55 21 ACQIS for a license to the ACQIS patents?

11:55 22 A. We have, I believe, 21 companies to pay us.

11:55 23 Q. All right. And how are licenses usually
11:56 24 documented?

11:56 25 A. It's -- it's -- you do a license agreement.

11:56 1 It's a patent license agreement with each company
11:56 2 signed by both sides.

11:56 3 Q. Okay. And so there's a contract?

11:56 4 A. Oh, absolutely. Yes.

11:56 5 Q. All right.

11:56 6 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit Exhibit
11:56 7 P-920, which is the summary of the licenses that we
11:56 8 discussed previously.

11:56 9 MR. BURESH: Just the existing objections
11:56 10 from this morning, Your Honor. Nothing further.

11:56 11 THE COURT: They'll be admitted.

11:56 12 MR. COLLARD: All right. Let's take a
11:56 13 look at Exhibit 920, please.

14 BY MR. COLLARD:

11:56 15 Q. Dr. Chu, this is a two-page document. We're
11:56 16 going to take it one page at a time. And I want to
11:56 17 make sure, have you personally confirmed that the
11:56 18 information in this summary matches the information in
11:57 19 the underlying contracts that you signed?

11:57 20 A. I did verify it. Yes.

11:57 21 Q. All right. Great.

11:57 22 Let's talk about this first column, Licensee.
11:57 23 What does that mean?

11:57 24 A. These are the companies that agreed to license
11:57 25 our patent rights.

11:57 1 Q. Okay. And what about the third column, Date?

11:57 2 A. The third column, yeah, the date is when we
11:57 3 signed an agreement.

11:57 4 Q. And so when did these companies begin taking
11:57 5 licenses?

11:57 6 A. We essentially have two groups of time frame.
11:57 7 I mention earlier that when -- where I was developing
11:57 8 my patent, the first group I was focus on modular
11:57 9 computer and the computer bus.

11:57 10 So this first group of company was building
11:58 11 modular computer and also using the computer bus. So I
11:58 12 talk to them.

11:58 13 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

11:58 14 And I want to talk about how ACQIS approached
11:58 15 negotiations with these companies.

11:58 16 What was ACQIS hoping to receive in return for
11:58 17 granting a license?

11:58 18 A. In the early days, we were asking for 3 to
11:58 19 5 percent of the royalty. Yes.

11:58 20 Q. But you were seeking money, a payment?

11:58 21 A. Yes.

11:58 22 Q. And let's talk about this Effective Royalty
11:58 23 Rate column. And I think you said you were seeking 3
11:58 24 to 5 percent.

11:58 25 But before we get into that, can you please

11:58 1 tell the jury -- can you just kind of start with what
11:58 2 is a royalty rate?

11:58 3 A. Your royalty rate is really just you take the
11:58 4 revenue of infringing product, and you ask for a
11:58 5 certain percentage of that, and that is the royalty
11:58 6 rate.

11:58 7 Q. Thank you.

11:58 8 And do you know what a lump-sum license
11:59 9 payment is?

11:59 10 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

11:59 11 Q. Can you explain to the jury what a lump-sum
11:59 12 license payment is?

11:59 13 A. Well, a lot of times we cannot agree on the
11:59 14 royalty rate because we just -- in the negotiation,
11:59 15 they won't agree to a number. So -- but instead what
11:59 16 they will say -- licensee will say, I'm willing to pay
11:59 17 you a fixed amount of money so that you don't come
11:59 18 bother us anymore.

11:59 19 So that's kind of the lump-sum agreement, that
11:59 20 we said, fine. We'll take that money and that's it.

11:59 21 Q. So if there's no effective royalty rate
11:59 22 listed, does that mean that it was a lump-sum payment?

11:59 23 A. Yes.

11:59 24 Q. All right. And what about this column that's
11:59 25 called Additional Compensation to ACQIS?

11:59 1 Do you see that?

11:59 2 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

11:59 3 Q. Why was ACQIS accepting other types of
11:59 4 compensation in some of these contracts?

11:59 5 A. It's a small part of the negotiation.
11:59 6 Sometimes they want to have a lower -- they want to pay
11:59 7 less. So you put in some -- some cases they, for
12:00 8 instance, exchanged patents with us, which allows them
12:00 9 to maybe pay less.

12:00 10 MR. COLLARD: Okay. Before I leave this
12:00 11 slide, I'd like to move to admit the joint exhibits
12:00 12 here. So J-34, J-32, J-27, J-28, and J-31.

12:00 13 MR. BURESH: No objection.

12:00 14 THE COURT: Admitted.

12:00 15 MR. COLLARD: Thank you.

12:00 16 All right. Let's go to the next slide,
12:00 17 please.

12:00 18 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:00 19 Q. So what are the dates for this range of
12:00 20 licenses?

12:00 21 A. Well, you have IBM roughly the same time frame
12:00 22 as the earlier companies that licensed our patents, and
12:00 23 the rest, it's later.

12:00 24 Q. Okay. So for this effective royalty rate
12:00 25 column, is this the same as the previous slide, where

12:00 1 if you had an effective royalty rate, you've listed it
12:01 2 here, but otherwise, these were lump-sum settlement
12:01 3 payments -- or lump-sum license payments?

12:01 4 A. Yes. It's the same.

12:01 5 Q. Okay. And these effective royalty rates are
12:01 6 closer to 1 percent than the 3 to 5 percent we saw on
12:01 7 the previous slide?

12:01 8 A. Yes.

12:01 9 Q. Was there a time where ACQIS' approach to
12:01 10 licensing changed?

12:01 11 A. Yes. There was.

12:01 12 Q. Which license did it change in respect to?

12:01 13 A. You know, licensing experience with IBM, it's
12:01 14 such that we find out that it's publicly more
12:01 15 appropriate for us to ask for 1 percent per invention.
12:01 16 We should not be asking for 3 to 5 percent.

12:01 17 Q. Okay.

12:01 18 A. So since then, we changed our position.

12:01 19 Q. Is that still the approach that ACQIS uses
12:01 20 today of 1 percent per invention?

12:02 21 A. Yes.

12:02 22 Q. In your view, how many inventions are issued
12:02 23 in this case?

12:02 24 A. Broadly speaking, we -- since we only focus on
12:02 25 computer bus, we are talking about a one invention for

12:02 1 the PCI Express standard, one invention for the USB
12:02 2 3.0, and in some sense it covers -- mainly it's those
12:02 3 two.

12:02 4 Q. Okay. You said you think it's two. Is that
12:02 5 what you said?

12:02 6 A. Yes.

12:02 7 Q. Two. Okay.

12:02 8 MR. COLLARD: And before we leave this
12:02 9 slide, I'll move to admit J-29, J-33, J-30, J-38, J-39,
12:02 10 J-40, J-21, and J-52.

12:02 11 MR. BURESH: No objection.

12:02 12 THE COURT: Admitted.

12:02 13 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:02 14 Q. So if a company ACQIS was negotiating with --
12:03 15 and I want to talk a little more about the negotiation
12:03 16 approach.

12:03 17 If they have -- if that company has products
12:03 18 that don't use the ACQIS technology, is that something
12:03 19 that ACQIS would want to include in the negotiation?

12:03 20 A. No. Absolutely not.

12:03 21 Q. Why not?

12:03 22 A. Well, if you don't have the patent rights, you
12:03 23 shouldn't ask for -- anybody for anything.

12:03 24 Q. Okay. What about within an individual
12:03 25 product? If there are parts of an individual product

12:03 1 that don't use the ACQIS technology, how does ACQIS
12:03 2 approach that in negotiations?

12:03 3 A. We don't normally try to put pieces that are
12:03 4 not infringed as part of the calculation, but it's not
12:03 5 that straightforward. A lot of times it's up to the
12:03 6 damage expert to determine whether that part is
12:03 7 necessary in order to infringe the patent. So it's a
12:03 8 judgment.

12:03 9 Q. Do you have any examples of something that
12:03 10 ACQIS would not seek to include in the negotiation for
12:03 11 a product?

12:03 12 A. Yes. Like in the laptop computer, we do not
12:04 13 include the display as part of the invention because
12:04 14 our invention relates to the computer itself.

12:04 15 Q. What about software?

12:04 16 A. Oh, no. No software.

12:04 17 Q. Okay.

12:04 18 A. No software.

12:04 19 Q. Okay. At some point did you become aware of
12:04 20 ASUS computer products that were using serial bus
12:04 21 technology?

12:04 22 A. Yes.

12:04 23 Q. And what did you do?

12:04 24 A. I sent them a letter.

12:04 25 MR. COLLARD: Okay. Move to admit P-50,

12:04 1 as discussed before.

12:04 2 I stopped the video. So can you pull it
12:04 3 up, please, Vicki? I just want to check it.

12:04 4 And then Page 2.

12:04 5 Okay. Move to admit P-50 as it's shown.

12:04 6 MR. BURESH: No objection.

12:04 7 THE COURT: Be admitted.

12:05 8 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:05 9 Q. So let's take a look at the first page of
12:05 10 P-50.

12:05 11 What is this document?

12:05 12 A. It's a letter I wrote, and I sent it to the
12:05 13 CEO of ASUS.

12:05 14 Q. And when did you -- did you write this letter?

12:05 15 A. Yes.

12:05 16 Q. And when did you send it?

12:05 17 A. May 15, 2018.

12:05 18 Q. Okay. Why did you list the recipient here as
12:05 19 ASUS?

12:05 20 A. If you -- if I -- I look into the company, and
12:05 21 actually it's all of course information from the web --
12:05 22 website. So ASUS.com is the -- is the website I go
12:05 23 into. It details all their product as ASUS product.

12:05 24 It has also any report that shows the
12:05 25 structure of the company, and I certainly want to

12:06 1 notify the controlling party, which is the top of the
12:06 2 chain -- and in this case, it would be Jerry Shen. He
12:06 3 is head of the whole ASUS group -- so that he's aware
12:06 4 of the infringement since he controls the whole
12:06 5 organization.

12:06 6 Q. Okay. And why did you choose to put
12:06 7 Partnering, Licensing, and Collaboration Opportunity in
12:06 8 the subject line? What did that mean to you?

12:06 9 A. It means we are flexible. We like to talk.
12:06 10 And we just don't want to sound too threatening at that
12:06 11 point.

12:06 12 Q. So you also mentioned opportunities to partner
12:06 13 in the first paragraph.

12:06 14 Have you partnered with other licensees in
12:06 15 previous licenses? And it would be beyond just money.

12:06 16 A. We did. I mean, I mentioned exchange of
12:06 17 patent rights. Actually, one company, we had a joint
12:07 18 development agreement. But yes.

12:07 19 Q. Okay. And then let's go down to the next
12:07 20 paragraph.

12:07 21 Did you mention in this letter which serial
12:07 22 bus technologies ASUS might be using that this letter
12:07 23 would apply to?

12:07 24 A. Yes. I did.

12:07 25 Q. Where was that?

12:07 1 A. You know, you see PCI Express and USB 3.0
12:07 2 mentioned.

12:07 3 Q. Okay. Where you say it's relevant to PCI
12:07 4 Express and USB 3.0?

12:07 5 A. Yes. We want to make their job easier to look
12:07 6 for where potentially there's infringement. So we tell
12:07 7 them, these are the technologies you should look at.

12:07 8 Q. Okay. Why did you determine that PCI Express
12:07 9 and USB 3.0 were relevant to your invention?

12:07 10 A. Remember I said earlier, my invention and my
12:07 11 only invention in the computer bus is using this LVDS
12:08 12 channel, the unidirectional channel, to communicate
12:08 13 data. And in both of these cases, that's what they
12:08 14 use.

12:08 15 Q. Thank you.

12:08 16 So based on your experiencing monitoring --
12:08 17 your experience and your monitoring of the computer
12:08 18 industry, did you believe that using these
12:08 19 technologies, these -- the low voltage differential
12:08 20 unidirectional serial channel, did you believe that was
12:08 21 benefitting ASUS?

12:08 22 A. Yes. Absolutely.

12:08 23 Q. How?

12:08 24 A. Well, if they don't support these standards,
12:08 25 they cannot sell any computer.

12:08 1 Q. Okay.

12:08 2 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at the next
12:08 3 paragraph, please.

4 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:08 5 Q. So you said you were trying to start with the
12:08 6 appropriate tone, but did you do anything in your
12:08 7 letter to try to convey a seriousness of the -- what
12:09 8 you were saying in the letter?

12:09 9 A. We tried to tell them that our patent has been
12:09 10 tested by the U.S. Patent Office multiple times. It's
12:09 11 not just a issuing of the patent.

12:09 12 Q. Okay.

12:09 13 A. So it's -- it's to say that our patent is
12:09 14 pretty solid.

12:09 15 Q. And did you mention prior licensees in this
12:09 16 paragraph as well?

12:09 17 A. Yeah. I mentioned like four Fortune Global
12:09 18 200 companies. A company like Dell would be one of
12:09 19 them.

12:09 20 Q. What were you trying to convey to ASUS by
12:09 21 mentioning this in the letter that you wrote and sent
12:09 22 to them?

12:09 23 A. Of course I want to impress them that even the
12:09 24 big companies is willing to license our patents. So
12:09 25 they should really consider that.

12:09 1 Q. Great.

12:09 2 MR. COLLARD: Let's go on to the second
12:09 3 page, please.

12:09 4 And maybe we can get -- I think all we
12:10 5 need is starting with "to assist."

12:10 6 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:10 7 Q. You list -- did you choose which patents to
12:10 8 list here?

12:10 9 A. Yes. I did.

12:10 10 Q. How did you choose which ACQIS patents to
12:10 11 identify?

12:10 12 A. Well, since I wrote all the claims, I know
12:10 13 what these patents were. And the claims covers really,
12:10 14 as I said, any way of using the invention in the
12:10 15 computer system. So to be thorough, I put down all the
12:10 16 patents that could potentially infringe.

12:10 17 Q. Are the five patents that are asserted this
12:10 18 week, are these patents listed in your letter here?

12:10 19 A. Yes.

12:10 20 Q. Okay. Do you agree that some of these patents
12:10 21 expired or all of -- the last of these patents expired
12:10 22 in -- around May 2020?

12:10 23 A. Yes.

12:10 24 Q. Does that concern you that the patents were
12:10 25 getting close to expiration when you sent your letter?

12:11 1 A. No. No.

12:11 2 Q. Can you explain to the jury why that wasn't a
12:11 3 concern for you?

12:11 4 A. The way you can seek damage is that the damage
12:11 5 starts when you send them the notification letter.
12:11 6 They need to know that they have infringed. Otherwise,
12:11 7 it doesn't mean anything.

12:11 8 That's one part of the patent. What we call
12:11 9 apparatus patent, where you just describe the computer.

12:11 10 There's another type of patent we call method
12:11 11 claims, what describes the manufacturing of those
12:11 12 products, which you really do not need to mark the
12:11 13 product, maybe.

12:11 14 And the patent system allows you to -- at the
12:11 15 time when you file a patent, it goes back six years.

12:11 16 Q. At the time you file your patent or the time
12:11 17 you file a patent lawsuit?

12:11 18 A. So when you file your lawsuit, you will go
12:11 19 back six years --

12:11 20 Q. Okay.

12:11 21 A. -- to cover the infringement period.

12:11 22 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

12:11 23 You also have a section here where you
12:12 24 identified some ASUS products.

12:12 25 Do you see that?

12:12 1 A. Yes.

12:12 2 Q. How did you choose what ASUS products to
12:12 3 identify?

12:12 4 A. So I go on the website, look at ASUS.com. I
12:12 5 look at their products. So two things would tell me
12:12 6 whether they infringe. They will a lot of times say,
12:12 7 we support PCI Express and USB 3.0. Of course that's
12:12 8 one of the indication. But actually, it's more than
12:12 9 that.

12:12 10 I mention Intel has a monopoly in the computer
12:12 11 business. Everybody uses their processors and logic
12:12 12 chips. So I have knowledge of how Intel requires their
12:12 13 customers to build their system. So if you use this
12:12 14 CPU, you have to use this system logic.

12:12 15 And they've clearly showed that if you use
12:12 16 this system logic, you will have -- you'll be
12:12 17 supporting PCI Express or USB 3.0.

12:12 18 So given the two combination knowledge, it's
12:12 19 not hard for me since I know computer very well to
12:13 20 determine that, oh, this product uses Intel CPU, in
12:13 21 some cases also AMD. And then they also say that they
12:13 22 support PCI Express.

12:13 23 So it's not hard for me to look through their
12:13 24 website, see what product they sell to say that they
12:13 25 infringe.

12:13 1 Q. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

12:13 2 You listed four categories here: Portable
12:13 3 computers, desktop computers, server products, and
12:13 4 something called motherboard product.

12:13 5 Do you see where I am?

12:13 6 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

12:13 7 Q. Are all four categories of ASUS products still
12:13 8 being accused of infringement today in this suit?

12:13 9 A. Yes.

12:13 10 Q. All right. I want to go back a little bit to
12:13 11 your unidirectional LVDS serial bus.

12:13 12 Did your analysis tell you that you just
12:13 13 described -- you described the things you looked at.
12:13 14 You looked at the processor, and you looked at some
12:13 15 information about the products online.

12:13 16 Did your analysis tell you whether these ASUS
12:14 17 products listed here used -- and I'm going to take this
12:14 18 in pieces.

12:14 19 Did it tell you whether they used a serial
12:14 20 bus?

12:14 21 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

12:14 22 Q. Okay. And did they use a serial bus?

12:14 23 A. Yes.

12:14 24 Q. Did your analysis tell you whether they used
12:14 25 unidirectional LVDS channels?

12:14 1 A. Yes.

12:14 2 Q. And beyond what you've already described, was
12:14 3 there any other way that you knew that?

12:14 4 And maybe not. I just -- you already
12:14 5 described looking online and looking at the type of
12:14 6 processor that they were using.

12:14 7 Was that enough to tell you that information?

12:14 8 A. It tells me 100 percent they use it. Yes.

12:14 9 Q. And was that relevant to your patents?

12:14 10 A. That -- those are my patents.

12:14 11 Q. Did ACQIS retain an independent expert to
12:14 12 review any material that ASUS produced about its
12:14 13 products and do a detailed analysis of infringement for
12:14 14 this case?

12:14 15 A. Yeah. We have a very nice gentleman,
12:15 16 Dr. Sarhan, to do that analysis. Yes.

12:15 17 Q. Okay. When you sent this letter, how did you
12:15 18 send it?

12:15 19 A. I sent it by FedEx and request a confirmation
12:15 20 of delivery.

12:15 21 Q. Did you get a delivery confirmation?

12:15 22 A. Yeah. They send me an e-mail to say it was
12:15 23 delivered. Yes.

12:15 24 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit P-51.

12:15 25 MR. BURESH: No objection.

12:15 1 THE COURT: Admitted.

12:15 2 MR. COLLARD: Let's take a look at that.

12:15 3 Let's look at the top half first.

4 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:15 5 Q. What is this showing?

12:15 6 A. Well, it's this e-mail I got. I think if
12:15 7 you're familiar with FedEx, you can ask for a tracking
12:15 8 update. So they told me that it was delivered to
12:15 9 ASUSTeK Computer on May 18th.

12:15 10 Q. Okay.

12:15 11 MR. COLLARD: And let's look at the
12:15 12 bottom half.

13 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:15 14 Q. What does -- what does that show?

12:15 15 A. It shows somebody signed for it, a Mr. Lee,
12:16 16 who's the receptionist/front desk person. And the time
12:16 17 of, I guess, delivery, 3:30.

12:16 18 Q. Did ACQIS reach out to FedEx to see if FedEx
12:16 19 had any evidence of delivering the letter to ASUS?

12:16 20 A. Yes. We did.

12:16 21 Q. All right.

12:16 22 MR. COLLARD: Move to admit exhibits
12:16 23 P-837 and 838.

12:16 24 MR. BURESH: No objection.

12:16 25 THE COURT: Admitted.

12:16 1 MR. COLLARD: Let's start with 838,
12:16 2 please.

3 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:16 4 Q. Did ACQIS get a response from FedEx?

12:16 5 Sorry. I'm not sure if I asked that.

12:16 6 Did ACQIS get a response from FedEx when they
12:16 7 reached out to see if FedEx had a record?

12:16 8 A. Yes.

12:16 9 Q. What is this document? This is P-838.

12:16 10 A. This is a FedEx internal document that
12:16 11 basically documents the shipping information and
12:16 12 basically says who signed for the letter.

12:17 13 Q. And in a general sense, is the information
12:17 14 that FedEx has consistent with information on the
12:17 15 exhibit we just looked at, P-51?

12:17 16 A. Yes. It was.

12:17 17 Q. Okay. But there's something new here, the
12:17 18 signature image.

12:17 19 MR. COLLARD: Can you blow that up for
12:17 20 me, please, Vicki?

12:17 21 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:17 22 Q. Dr. Chu, can you read that stamp?

12:17 23 A. Yeah. I can read Chinese.

12:17 24 Q. Okay. What does it say?

12:17 25 A. It says Lee Yen Gee. So what that means is,

12:17 1 Lee is Lee. And that is the same name that was shared
12:17 2 in the e-mail confirmation I got. Yen Gee is just the
12:17 3 rest of his name.

12:17 4 Q. Okay. And what about this -- it looks like
12:17 5 maybe it says 15:30.

12:17 6 Do you know what that might be?

12:17 7 A. That's the -- I think the time that probably
12:17 8 Mr. Lee put down. It's basically 3:30 p.m.

12:17 9 MR. COLLARD: Can we just look at this in
12:17 10 this record, please?

12:18 11 There we go.

12:18 12 And then, now let's look very briefly at
12:18 13 Exhibit 837.

12:18 14 And we'll blow up the content in the
12:18 15 middle here.

16 BY MR. COLLARD:

12:18 17 Q. And what is this document, Dr. Chu?

12:18 18 A. As you can see, it comes from the legal
12:18 19 department. We asked for confirmation. So they
12:18 20 actually have notarized a document that says: This our
12:18 21 internal document that represents delivery of the
12:18 22 letter.

12:18 23 Q. Okay. So even though you got delivery
12:18 24 confirmation at the time and FedEx confirmed that ASUS
12:18 25 received the letter, did you receive a response from

12:18 1 anyone at ASUS after sending this?

12:18 2 A. No.

12:18 3 Q. Dr. Chu, has ASUS ever offered to pay for a
12:18 4 license to your patents at any price?

12:18 5 A. No.

12:18 6 Q. If a company like ASUS is using your patents
12:18 7 without a license, how does that help them?

12:18 8 A. It's very unfair to all my other licensees who
12:19 9 are their competitors. And they get to, you know, ship
12:19 10 their product into U.S. and -- which the products
12:19 11 infringes our patent rights, and they don't want to pay
12:19 12 anything.

12:19 13 Q. Okay. If a company like ASUS is using the
12:19 14 technology in your patents and refuses to pay for a
12:19 15 license, what options do you have?

12:19 16 A. The only option is to come here.

12:19 17 Q. Okay. Dr. Chu, why did you bring this lawsuit
12:19 18 to protect your patent rights?

12:19 19 A. I owe it to my licensees and also my
12:19 20 shareholders, which includes my family and my friends.

12:19 21 Q. Thank you.

12:19 22 MR. COLLARD: Pass the witness, Your
12:19 23 Honor.

12:19 24 THE COURT: Would now be a good time for
12:19 25 a break?

12:19 1 MR. BURESH: It would, Your Honor.

12:19 2 THE COURT: Okay. Ladies and gentlemen
12:19 3 of the jury, we are going to take our recess. If you
12:19 4 all would be back by about 1:00 -- about 1:30, 1:35,
12:20 5 we'll get started pretty shortly after that.

12:20 6 I have a -- I'm the -- we have two other
12:20 7 phenomenal magistrate judges in the courthouse, but we
12:20 8 only have one of me, one district judge, and I have
12:20 9 something I have to do at 1:00. And so I think it'll
12:20 10 take about a half hour, not much longer, and I just
12:20 11 hate to keep y'all waiting.

12:20 12 So let's take -- come back at 1:45
12:20 13 because I hate keeping you all here. And we'll get
12:20 14 started as soon after that as I can get...

12:20 15 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

12:20 16 THE COURT: And please remember my
12:20 17 instructions I gave you this morning.

12:20 18 (Jury exited the courtroom.)

12:20 19 THE COURT: You may step down.

12:21 20 Thank you. You may be seated.

12:21 21 So we'll have -- after this gentleman
12:21 22 finishes, we'll have your infringement expert. Who
12:21 23 will come after that?

12:21 24 MR. COLLARD: After that we will have --
12:21 25 go ahead.

12:21 1 MS. AMSTUTZ: After that we're going to
12:21 2 call -- we will call Barbara Chen, who's the corporate
12:21 3 representative for ASUSTeK.

12:21 4 THE COURT: Okay. I don't mean to insult
12:21 5 anyone here. Will there be a translator? Will they be
12:21 6 speaking without a translator?

12:21 7 MR. BURESH: No translator, Your Honor.

12:21 8 THE COURT: Okay. And so how far -- will
12:21 9 that get us through the end of the day, do we think?
12:21 10 We'll probably go till 5:30 or 6:00.

12:21 11 MS. AMSTUTZ: Most certainly.

12:21 12 THE COURT: Okay. Very good.

12:21 13 You all have a good lunch. If you'll be
12:21 14 back around 1:30, as soon as we -- or 1:45 -- I think
12:21 15 that's what I said to them -- we'll get started just as
12:21 16 soon as I'm done with my 1 o'clock matter.

12:21 17 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

12:22 18 (Recess taken.)

01:47 19 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

01:47 20 THE COURT: Please remain standing for
01:47 21 the jury.

01:47 22 (Jury entered the courtroom.)

01:48 23 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be
01:48 24 seated.

01:48 25 Counsel?

CROSS-EXAMINATION

BY MR. BURESH:

Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Chu.

A. Good afternoon.

Q. How are you doing?

A. Good.

Q. Did you have a nice lunch?

A. Yes.

Q. Okay. Good.

I'd like to start out -- I believe you said during your direct testimony -- do you still have the little module up with you?

A. You mean this iMod?

Q. Yes, the iMod.

Now, that iMod, is that the one you actually sold 200 of?

A. Yes.

Q. Yes? Okay.

And that iMod never had your LVDS invention in it, correct?

A. It did not.

Q. Because your LVDS invention, you couldn't get it to work?

A. Correct.

Q. So what you have in this iMod you sold was the

01:49 1 old PCI local bus standard, correct?

01:49 2 A. Correct.

01:49 3 Q. Okay. I believe you said you started working
01:49 4 on your invention around Christmas of 1997; is that
01:49 5 correct?

01:49 6 A. Correct.

01:49 7 Q. And you wrote a series of three white papers?

01:49 8 A. Yes.

01:49 9 Q. Now, your first white paper, which we've seen
01:49 10 already, it was Joint Exhibit 22, it was dated
01:50 11 January 1st of 1998, correct?

01:50 12 A. Yes.

01:50 13 Q. And that paper took you a week to ten days to
01:50 14 write, between Christmas and January 1st?

01:50 15 A. Yes. It did.

01:50 16 Q. The next week you wrote your second white
01:50 17 paper. That was dated January 7th of 1998, correct?

01:50 18 A. Correct.

01:50 19 Q. So that one took you one week to write?

01:50 20 A. Yes.

01:50 21 Q. And after that, you wrote a third white paper
01:50 22 that was dated January 15th of 1998; is that correct?

01:50 23 A. Correct.

01:50 24 Q. So in total, are those three all the white
01:50 25 papers you wrote for this invention?

01:50 1 A. Those are the three white papers.

01:50 2 Q. Okay. So all told, you spent approximately
01:50 3 three weeks writing down your invention in your white
01:50 4 papers; is that correct?

01:50 5 A. In those white papers, yes.

01:51 6 MR. BURESH: Mr. Palisoul, if we could
01:51 7 pull up J-22, please.

01:51 8 BY MR. BURESH:

01:51 9 Q. This is previously admitted. So I want to
01:51 10 look at the title of your first white paper. It is A
01:51 11 Personal Computer with Attached Computer Module inside
01:51 12 a Computer Bay within a Peripheral Console.

01:51 13 Do you see that?

01:51 14 A. Yes.

01:51 15 Q. So that piece that's in front of you there is
01:51 16 what you were calling the "attached computer module";
01:51 17 is that correct?

01:51 18 A. Correct.

01:51 19 Q. And this piece over here would be the
01:51 20 peripheral console, correct?

01:51 21 A. Correct.

01:51 22 Q. And that slot there is called the bay,
01:51 23 correct?

01:51 24 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:51 25 MR. BURESH: If we could go to the

01:51 1 abstract, Bates No. 8129.

01:52 2 BY MR. BURESH:

01:52 3 Q. You were calling this: A new type of personal
01:52 4 computer referred to as the Attached Personal Computer,
01:52 5 AttachPC; is that correct?

01:52 6 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:52 7 Q. That's what you invented?

01:52 8 A. Yes.

01:52 9 Q. Okay. And again, the AttachPC is made up of a
01:52 10 removable computer module called the "ACM," correct?

01:52 11 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:52 12 Q. And that would go inside of the peripheral
01:52 13 console using the bay we just discussed?

01:52 14 A. Correct.

01:52 15 MR. BURESH: If we could go to Figure 1,
01:52 16 please.

01:52 17 BY MR. BURESH:

01:52 18 Q. Figure 1 from your first white paper, J-22, is
01:52 19 an example of a desktop attached personal computer,
01:52 20 correct?

01:52 21 A. Yes.

01:52 22 Q. And that shows an attached computer module
01:52 23 that would be inserted into a peripheral console,
01:52 24 correct?

01:52 25 A. Correct.

01:53 1 MR. BURESH: If we can go to Figure 2,
01:53 2 please.

01:53 3 BY MR. BURESH:

01:53 4 Q. Figure 2 shows an example of a portable
01:53 5 attached personal computer, correct?

01:53 6 A. Correct.

01:53 7 Q. Okay. And here you have an attached computer
01:53 8 module that, again, go into a portable peripheral
01:53 9 console, correct?

01:53 10 A. Correct.

01:53 11 Q. Now, this is not a laptop, is it?

01:53 12 A. Of course it is.

01:53 13 Q. Okay. Now, when my clients' laptops are sold,
01:53 14 is there any module that comes out of them?

01:53 15 A. A modular computer and laptop are two separate
01:53 16 things.

01:53 17 Q. Okay. A laptop is not a modular computer?

01:53 18 A. Laptop does not need to be a modular computer.
01:53 19 Correct.

01:54 20 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we could pull up
01:54 21 DX-63, please.

01:54 22 BY MR. BURESH:

01:54 23 Q. Do you recognize the document that's on the
01:54 24 screen in front of you?

01:54 25 A. Yes.

01:54 1 Q. What is it?

01:54 2 A. It's a presentation I made.

01:54 3 Q. To Compaq Computer?

01:54 4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Okay.

01:54 6 MR. BURESH: Your Honor, I move to admit

01:54 7 Defendant's Exhibit 63.

01:54 8 MR. COLLARD: No objection.

01:54 9 THE COURT: Admitted.

01:54 10 BY MR. BURESH:

01:55 11 Q. Okay. Again, this is a June 1998 presentation
01:55 12 that you gave to Compaq; is that fair?

01:55 13 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

14 Q. Okay.

01:55 15 MR. BURESH: If we could go to the

01:55 16 Meeting Purpose, please.

01:55 17 BY MR. BURESH:

01:55 18 Q. A purpose of your meeting with Compaq was,
01:55 19 according to the first bullet, to disclose your
01:55 20 invention, benefits, technology, and market analysis,
01:55 21 correct?

01:55 22 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:55 23 Q. And you wanted to discuss business
01:55 24 opportunities, correct?

01:55 25 A. Yes.

01:55 1 Q. Or partnership?

01:55 2 A. Yes.

01:55 3 Q. Okay. On the next page --

01:55 4 MR. BURESH: Turn to the next page,
01:55 5 please.

01:55 6 BY MR. BURESH:

01:55 7 Q. -- here you describe your invention as the
01:55 8 attached computer module; is that correct?

01:55 9 A. Yes.

01:55 10 Q. And the ACM, as we heard during your direct
01:55 11 testimony, is what you would consider the guts of a
01:55 12 computer system, correct?

01:55 13 A. Yes.

01:55 14 Q. By "guts," it would include a CPU, correct?

01:56 15 A. Uh-huh. Yes.

01:56 16 Q. Main memory?

01:56 17 A. Yes.

01:56 18 Q. Graphics subsystems?

01:56 19 A. Yes.

01:56 20 Q. Those sorts of things, correct?

21 A. Correct.

01:56 22 Q. And again, this is a small device, about the
01:56 23 size of a VHS tape that you have in front of you here
01:56 24 today?

01:56 25 A. Correct.

01:56 1 MR. BURESH: If we could go to the next
01:56 2 page, please.

01:56 3 BY MR. BURESH:

01:56 4 Q. As we see here, you can transport your ACM
01:56 5 from home to office, but you have to have a console in
01:56 6 both places, correct?

01:56 7 A. Yes.

01:56 8 MR. BURESH: If you'd go to the next
01:56 9 page.

01:56 10 BY MR. BURESH:

01:56 11 Q. You describe to Compaq in this presentation a
01:56 12 variety of console options. Is that fair to say?

01:56 13 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:56 14 Q. Okay. Including a minimal portable console,
01:56 15 you called it?

01:56 16 A. Yes.

01:56 17 Q. Okay. And you're referring here to Desktop
01:57 18 ACM Mobility versus Notebook at the title of that
01:57 19 slide.

01:57 20 Do you see that?

01:57 21 A. Yes.

01:57 22 Q. So again, you're distinguishing your invention
01:57 23 from a notebook computer, correct?

01:57 24 A. From a pure notebook. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:57 25 Q. Okay. And the notebook would be synonymous

01:57 1 with a laptop?

01:57 2 A. Yes.

01:57 3 Q. So you weren't telling Compaq or anyone else
01:57 4 that you developed a laptop computer, correct?

01:57 5 A. It was developing a modular system can be used
01:57 6 as a laptop.

01:57 7 Q. But it was not a laptop, correct?

01:57 8 A. I guess it's wording. If it's used as a
01:57 9 laptop, it is not constructed as a regular laptop.

10 Q. Okay.

01:57 11 MR. BURESH: Let's go back to the first
01:57 12 white paper, Joint Exhibit 22, please.

01:57 13 BY MR. BURESH:

01:58 14 Q. Now, in this paper, you also described your
01:58 15 idea for communicating between the ACM and the
01:58 16 peripheral console, correct?

01:58 17 A. Correct.

01:58 18 Q. Okay.

01:58 19 MR. BURESH: If we could go -- let's
01:58 20 see -- Page 6, please. J-22-6.

01:58 21 BY MR. BURESH:

01:58 22 Q. Now, the mechanism you described in this paper
01:58 23 for handling the communication between your ACM and the
01:58 24 peripheral console was called an XP Bus; is that
01:58 25 correct?

01:58 1 A. Correct.

01:58 2 Q. Okay. And the XP Bus is an abbreviation for
01:58 3 cross peripheral bus; is that correct?

01:58 4 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

01:58 5 Q. Okay. And you see in the first sentence on
01:58 6 Page 6 from J-22, the XP Bus is also referred to as a
01:59 7 peripheral bridge bus.

01:59 8 Do you see that?

01:59 9 A. Yes.

01:59 10 Q. So the XP Bus is a peripheral bridge bus
01:59 11 between the ACM module and the peripheral console,
01:59 12 correct?

01:59 13 A. Correct.

01:59 14 Q. I believe you talked about Figure 5 during
01:59 15 your direct testimony?

01:59 16 MR. BURESH: If we could pull that up,
01:59 17 please.

18 BY MR. BURESH:

01:59 19 Q. Now, here we see the attached computer module
01:59 20 on the left, correct?

01:59 21 A. Correct.

01:59 22 Q. And a peripheral console on the right,
01:59 23 correct?

01:59 24 A. Correct.

01:59 25 Q. And your XP Bus is bridging those two,

01:59 1 correct?

01:59 2 A. Correct.

01:59 3 Q. Now, there is only one XP Bus in your

01:59 4 invention, correct?

01:59 5 A. I want to understand your question. What do

02:00 6 you mean, there is one XP Bus?

02:00 7 Q. Sure.

02:00 8 You have one XP Bus depicted -- I'll narrow it

02:00 9 down for you.

02:00 10 In Figure 5, there's just one XP Bus, correct?

02:00 11 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:00 12 Q. And in any of your disclosures, I'm broadening

02:00 13 it out, there is no embodiment with more than one XP

02:00 14 Bus; is that correct?

02:00 15 A. That's a broad statement. In all the

02:00 16 embodiment you mention, there is no bus that's more

02:00 17 than one XP Bus?

02:00 18 Q. Yeah. Let me say the question again. Maybe

02:00 19 slightly rephrase it, okay?

02:00 20 You would agree with me that you don't have a

02:00 21 specific disclosure of an embodiment with two XP Buses;

02:00 22 isn't that correct?

02:00 23 A. No. Not correct.

02:01 24 Q. Okay.

02:01 25 MR. BURESH: Mr. Palisoul, could you pull

02:01 1 up the 2/13/2024 transcript?

2 BY MR. BURESH:

02:01 3 Q. Were you deposed on February 13th of 2024 in a
02:01 4 proceeding, Dr. Chu?

02:01 5 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:01 6 Q. Okay.

02:01 7 MR. BURESH: Could you turn to Page 225
02:01 8 in the area around Line 9 through 15, please?

02:01 9 BY MR. BURESH:

02:01 10 Q. Now, during a deposition, you are under oath,
02:01 11 correct?

02:01 12 A. Yes. I was.

02:01 13 Q. Now, I'll ask you to read the transcript in
02:01 14 front of you.

02:01 15 Does that refresh your recollection?

02:01 16 A. Okay. Yes.

02:01 17 Q. And I'll ask you the question again.

02:02 18 Would you agree with me that you don't have a
02:02 19 specific disclosure of an embodiment with two XP Buses;
02:02 20 is that correct?

02:02 21 A. That's correct. The answer was correct.

02:02 22 Q. Thank you.

02:02 23 Coming back to Figure 5, Dr. Chu, you have
02:02 24 what's called interface controllers on both sides. One
02:02 25 on the attached computer modular, and one on the

02:02 1 peripheral console; is that correct?

02:02 2 A. Correct.

02:02 3 Q. Now, in Figure 5, there's multiple different
02:02 4 peripheral buses being depicted coming into and out of
02:02 5 your interface controllers, correct?

02:02 6 A. Yes.

02:02 7 Q. I'm sorry.

02:03 8 MR. BURESH: Back to J-22. Thank you for
02:03 9 the note. Now we're all together.

02:03 10 BY MR. BURESH:

02:03 11 Q. Back to Figure 5.

02:03 12 All right. Coming into and out of your
02:03 13 interface controllers are a number of peripheral buses,
02:03 14 correct?

02:03 15 A. Correct.

02:03 16 Q. Okay. Now, we've talked about PCI before, so
02:03 17 I'll start there. It's the second line down on the
02:03 18 left on the attached computer module.

02:03 19 Do you see that?

02:03 20 A. Yes.

02:03 21 Q. Now, that is the PCI local bus, correct?

02:03 22 A. Correct.

02:03 23 Q. That was a standard that had been around for
02:03 24 eight or nine years prior to your invention, correct?

02:03 25 A. Correct.

02:03 1 Q. Okay. The next one down is USB.

02:03 2 Do you see that?

02:03 3 A. Yes.

02:04 4 Q. And that's a standard that had been around
02:04 5 since around 1993; is that correct?

02:04 6 A. Yeah. Probably. Uh-huh.

02:04 7 Q. Okay. So those bus standards are being sent
02:04 8 into your host interface controller, correct?

02:04 9 A. Yes.

02:04 10 Q. Okay. And then inside of your host interface
02:04 11 controller, you are converting and merging all of those
02:04 12 peripheral bus signals onto your XP Bus; is that fair?

02:04 13 A. Yes.

02:04 14 Q. And you'll carry those across the XP Bus to a
02:04 15 peripheral interface controller, correct?

02:04 16 A. Yes.

02:04 17 Q. And your peripheral interface controller will
02:04 18 reconvert those signals back into their original
02:04 19 standards, correct?

02:04 20 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:04 21 Q. So you have industry standard buses on both
02:04 22 sides, on the ACM and on the peripheral console,
02:04 23 correct?

02:04 24 A. Correct.

02:04 25 Q. And you convert those and reconvert them to

02:05 1 get them across your XP Bus, correct?

02:05 2 A. Uh-huh.

02:05 3 Q. Now, you talked a fair amount about the PCI
02:05 4 local bus. It was the parallel one, right?

02:05 5 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:05 6 Q. Yeah. USB was serial, correct?

02:05 7 A. It was.

02:05 8 Q. Yeah. And it was using differential
02:05 9 signaling, correct?

02:05 10 A. Yes.

02:05 11 Q. And that preexisted your invention by multiple
02:05 12 years, correct?

02:05 13 A. The serial part of it, yes.

02:05 14 Q. And the differential signaling part of it?

02:05 15 A. That part of it, I think that was later for
02:05 16 USB 2.0.

02:05 17 Q. How long has differential signaling been
02:05 18 around, Dr. Chu?

02:05 19 A. I can't answer that. It has been there a long
02:05 20 time. Yes.

02:06 21 Q. Long time. Like, 50, 60, maybe even 70 years,
02:06 22 right?

02:06 23 A. Okay. Yes.

02:06 24 Q. So nothing new about differential signaling?

02:06 25 A. What I referred to is USB 2.0 uses low-voltage

02:06 1 differential signal. 1.0 uses high-voltage.

02:06 2 Q. Okay. Now, in this white paper --

02:06 3 MR. BURESH: If we could back up to

02:06 4 Figure 4, please.

02:06 5 BY MR. BURESH:

02:06 6 Q. This is a slightly more detailed depiction of
02:06 7 your attached computer module, correct?

02:06 8 A. Yes.

02:06 9 Q. We're still seeing our peripheral buses, the
02:06 10 PCI to USB, et cetera. We're still seeing the host
02:06 11 interface controller, correct?

02:06 12 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:06 13 Q. But now you have a lot more stuff in this
02:06 14 particular figure, correct?

02:06 15 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:06 16 Q. Okay. So we have a separate host interface
02:07 17 controller. There's something called a south bridge.
02:07 18 There's a north bridge, graphics accelerator, CPU.

02:07 19 There's all those components that are the guts
02:07 20 of the computer system, correct?

02:07 21 A. Correct.

02:07 22 Q. Now, in your white paper --

02:07 23 MR. BURESH: If we can go to Page 7,
02:07 24 please. 22-7.

02:07 25 Thank you.

02:07 1 BY MR. BURESH:

02:07 2 Q. Here you talk about: The continuous drive
02:07 3 towards chip integration can merge individual devices
02:07 4 within the ACM.

02:07 5 Do you see that?

02:07 6 A. Yes.

02:07 7 Q. The host interface controller can be
02:07 8 successively integrated with more and more of the rest
02:07 9 of the system devices, correct?

02:07 10 A. Correct.

02:07 11 Q. Now, integration is just talking about taking
02:07 12 two things and merging it into one?

02:07 13 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:07 14 Q. Okay. Or taking four things and merging them
02:07 15 into three. That would be a form of integration?

02:07 16 A. It's extending it, but it's true also, a form
02:08 17 of integration.

02:08 18 Q. Four down to one, now that'd be an
02:08 19 integration?

02:08 20 A. I would call that a reduction. Four to one is
02:08 21 an integration. Yes.

02:08 22 Q. Okay. Now, it says here: A small step in
02:08 23 integration is combining south bridge and host
02:08 24 interface controller.

02:08 25 Do you see that?

02:08 1 A. Yes.

02:08 2 MR. BURESH: Can we go to Figure 12 of
02:08 3 the J-22, please?

02:08 4 BY MR. BURESH:

02:08 5 Q. So this is another depiction of your
02:08 6 invention, correct?

02:08 7 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:08 8 Q. And in this one, you've brought the integrated
02:08 9 south bridge and the host interface controller into one
02:08 10 box, right?

02:08 11 A. Right. Uh-huh.

02:08 12 Q. That's a small step in integration?

02:08 13 A. Yes.

02:08 14 MR. BURESH: If we go to Figure 13.

15 BY MR. BURESH:

02:09 16 Q. Now we'll see another step of integration
02:09 17 because here we've combined the CPU with the north
02:09 18 bridge and the graphics accelerator, right?

02:09 19 A. That's a separate integration. Yes.

02:09 20 Q. And then you still have the same south bridge
02:09 21 and host interface integration as well, correct?

02:09 22 A. Yeah. In this embodiment, yes.

02:09 23 Q. Okay.

02:09 24 MR. BURESH: Now, if we go to 13,
02:09 25 Figure 13 -- I'm sorry. Let's go to Figure 14 since

02:09 1 we're already on 13.

2 BY MR. BURESH:

02:09 3 Q. Figure 14, still from J-22, now we see what
02:09 4 you call the biggest step of integration, which is to
02:09 5 bring all of that into one box. Integrated CPU, core
02:09 6 logic, graphics accelerator, and the interface
02:09 7 controller, correct?

02:09 8 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:09 9 Q. Now, just to be clear, the core logic there
02:09 10 was what was previously called the north bridge and the
02:09 11 south bridge?

02:09 12 A. Yes.

02:10 13 MR. BURESH: If we could go back to
02:10 14 Page 7 now.

02:10 15 BY MR. BURESH:

02:10 16 Q. In the final sentence you say: These advances
02:10 17 in integration do not change the fundamental invention
02:10 18 of repartitioning of a personal computer system into
02:10 19 ACM and a peripheral console.

02:10 20 Correct?

02:10 21 A. Yes. That's what I said. Uh-huh.

02:10 22 Q. So the various integrations we've just talked
02:10 23 about, they don't change the fundamental concept of
02:10 24 your invention, correct?

02:10 25 A. What this implies, I believe, is talking about

02:10 1 a modular aspect of the invention, about integrating a
02:10 2 different function together inside ACM. It doesn't
02:10 3 change the modular form factor invention that I was
02:10 4 referring to here.

02:10 5 Q. Yeah. That's right. Thank you.

02:10 6 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we could go to
02:10 7 Exhibit J-23 now.

02:11 8 BY MR. BURESH:

02:11 9 Q. This, I believe, is your third white paper,
02:11 10 the January 15, 1998 white paper?

02:11 11 A. Yes. It is.

02:11 12 Q. And in this paper, you're talking about two
02:11 13 separate PCI or PCI-like buses bridged by a pair of
02:11 14 interface devices through a high-speed bus, correct?

02:11 15 A. Correct.

02:11 16 Q. So we're seeing the bridging concept that we
02:11 17 talked about earlier in this white paper as well?

02:11 18 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:11 19 MR. BURESH: Could we go to the summary
02:11 20 on Page 4, please?

02:11 21 Back up one page. Or just find the
02:11 22 summary.

02:11 23 BY MR. BURESH:

02:12 24 Q. I'll come back to that because as I said in
02:12 25 opening, when we're lost, it's usually just me. And

02:12 1 I'm lost at this point. So I'm going to go on to the
02:12 2 next exhibit.

02:12 3 MR. BURESH: If we could go to Joint
02:12 4 Exhibit 35, please. Next page.

02:12 5 Okay. If you could zoom in on the
02:12 6 provisional number up at the top, please.

02:12 7 BY MR. BURESH:

02:12 8 Q. Dr. Chu, what are we looking at here?

02:12 9 A. I think we saw this before. It was an
02:12 10 application by my patent attorneys to submit this
02:12 11 invention on May 1st, 1998.

02:12 12 Q. So this was the provisional application filed
02:13 13 on May 1st, 1998; is that correct?

02:13 14 A. Correct. Yeah.

02:13 15 Q. Okay. Now, in the '886 provisional patent
02:13 16 application from May 1st, 1998, you described the XP
02:13 17 Bus in the same way that we just looked at in your
02:13 18 white papers; is that fair to say?

02:13 19 A. I believe after I wrote my white paper, I
02:13 20 continued to supply some of the engineering drawings
02:13 21 and such, and then I think some of them was
02:13 22 incorporated into the provisional.

02:13 23 So the provisional includes part of the white
02:13 24 paper or -- not all of it, of course, but it also
02:13 25 includes additional disclosure I gave to the patent

02:13 1 attorney to put in there.

02:13 2 Q. Okay. Let me be more specific with my
02:13 3 question.

02:13 4 MR. BURESH: If we could go to J-35-10.
02:13 5 First paragraph.

02:13 6 BY MR. BURESH:

02:14 7 Q. Now, we've seen this paragraph previously from
02:14 8 one of the white papers, correct?

02:14 9 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:14 10 Q. And here you're describing again your XP Bus
02:14 11 as a cross peripheral bus, correct?

02:14 12 A. Yes.

02:14 13 Q. And you're referring to it as a peripheral
02:14 14 bridge bus in your patent filing, correct?

02:14 15 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:14 16 Q. If we go to Figure 1 of your provisional, '886
02:14 17 provisional.

02:14 18 You see the same figure describing your
02:14 19 desktop peripheral console with an ACM, correct?

02:14 20 A. Correct. Yes.

02:14 21 MR. BURESH: If we go to Figure 3.

02:14 22 BY MR. BURESH:

02:14 23 Q. We will see the same portable peripheral
02:14 24 console with an ACM, correct?

02:14 25 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:14 1 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we go to Figure 6
02:14 2 on J-35-16.

02:14 3 BY MR. BURESH:

02:14 4 Q. This is the same depiction of the host
02:15 5 interface controller with all the peripheral buses
02:15 6 coming into it, correct?

02:15 7 A. Yes. Attorney took my white paper diagrams on
02:15 8 here.

02:15 9 MR. BURESH: Okay. Go to Figure 11,
02:15 10 please.

02:15 11 BY MR. BURESH:

02:15 12 Q. Now, Figure 11 of the provisional patent
02:15 13 application adds in the peripheral console, correct?

02:15 14 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:15 15 MR. BURESH: If we could back up to
02:15 16 Figures -- start with Figure 7, please.

02:15 17 BY MR. BURESH:

02:15 18 Q. We're also going to see the same stages of
02:15 19 potential integration, correct, in Figure 7?

02:15 20 A. Correct.

02:15 21 MR. BURESH: And turn to Figure 8.

02:15 22 BY MR. BURESH:

02:15 23 Q. This is the middle level of integration?

02:15 24 A. Correct.

02:15 25 MR. BURESH: If we go to Figure 9.

02:15 1 BY MR. BURESH:

02:16 2 Q. This is the biggest level of integration that
02:16 3 you depicted, correct?

02:16 4 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:16 5 Q. Same as in the white papers?

02:16 6 A. Correct.

02:16 7 Q. Now, this '886 provisional patent application
02:16 8 that we're looking at here, it's fully incorporated in
02:16 9 the asserted patents, correct?

02:16 10 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:16 11 Q. That means that the full contents of this
02:16 12 provisional application are explicitly contained in
02:16 13 each of the asserted patents?

02:16 14 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:16 15 MR. BURESH: If we could turn to J-1,
02:16 16 please, which is the '786 patent.

17 BY MR. BURESH:

02:16 18 Q. That's one of the patents you're asserting in
02:16 19 this case, correct?

02:16 20 A. Correct.

02:16 21 Q. And in these asserted -- in this asserted
02:16 22 patent, the '768 patent, we're going to find the same
02:16 23 bridging concept for the XP Bus that we've been talking
02:16 24 about; is that correct?

02:16 25 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:16 1 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we could turn to
02:17 2 Column 5, Lines 19 through 21.

02:17 3 BY MR. BURESH:

02:17 4 Q. Okay. There's a little more highlighting than
02:17 5 I need here, but if we go down to Line 19, do you see
02:17 6 that, Dr. Chu?

02:17 7 A. Yes.

02:17 8 Q. It says: The present invention encompasses an
02:17 9 apparatus for bridging a first computer interface bus
02:17 10 and a second computer interface bus.

02:17 11 Do you see that?

02:17 12 A. I do. Uh-huh.

02:17 13 Q. Do you agree that that's the present invention
02:17 14 in the '768 patent?

02:17 15 A. You -- the present invention is what that
02:18 16 says. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:18 17 Q. Okay. Now, if we go down to -- this is just
02:18 18 talking about an apparatus for bridging.

02:18 19 MR. BURESH: If we go down to Line 25,
02:18 20 please. 26. Thank you.

02:18 21 BY MR. BURESH:

02:18 22 Q. The apparatus comprises an interface channel.
02:18 23 Do you see that?

02:18 24 A. Uh-huh.

02:18 25 MR. BURESH: Now, if we go to Column 15,

02:18 1 Line 65, and on to Column 16, please. One more line,
02:19 2 please.

02:19 3 BY MR. BURESH:

02:19 4 Q. So previously, we saw that the apparatus that
02:19 5 was doing the bridging was called an interface channel,
02:19 6 and here we're seeing that the XP Bus is referred to
02:19 7 herein as an interface channel.

02:19 8 Do you see that?

02:19 9 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:19 10 Q. So bringing that all together, the XP Bus
02:19 11 described in this '768 patent is bridging two other
02:19 12 buses, correct?

02:19 13 A. Can you restate your question?

02:19 14 Q. Sure.

02:19 15 In the '768 patent, the XP Bus is serving the
02:19 16 function of bridging two other peripheral buses; isn't
02:20 17 that correct?

02:20 18 A. In this particular sentence, it doesn't say
02:20 19 that. But I thought you were referring to the
02:20 20 previous --

02:20 21 Q. The previous two sections we've looked at?

02:20 22 A. Yes. That's one of its use. Yes.

02:20 23 Q. Okay. Thank you.

02:20 24 You also repeated some of the figures from the
02:20 25 '886 provisional patent into this '768 patent; isn't

02:20 1 that correct?

02:20 2 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:20 3 MR. BURESH: If we could go to, for

02:20 4 example, Figure 8A of the '768 patent.

5 BY MR. BURESH:

02:20 6 Q. Okay. Now, this is the same Figure 8 that we

02:20 7 saw on the provisional patent application, correct?

02:21 8 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:21 9 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we look at

02:21 10 Figure 8B in the '768 patent.

11 BY MR. BURESH:

02:21 12 Q. Now, this is the same as Figure 9 that we saw

02:21 13 in the provisional application, correct?

02:21 14 A. Yes.

02:21 15 Q. Now, if we focus on the '768 patent, which is

02:21 16 on the left-hand side of your screen, the caption of

02:21 17 that figure says: Attached computer module with single

02:21 18 chip fully integrated: CPU, cache, core logic,

02:21 19 graphics controller, and interface controller, correct?

02:21 20 A. Correct.

02:21 21 Q. That's the same language as the caption of

02:21 22 Figure 9 in the '886 provisional, correct?

02:21 23 A. Yeah. It has to be the same.

02:21 24 Q. Okay. Now, if we go to Column 8 of the '768

02:21 25 patent, and this is at Lines 24 to 26, it looks like.

02:22 1 Here it uses the exact same caption language
02:22 2 to describe Figure 8B, correct?

02:22 3 A. Correct.

02:22 4 Q. And if we go to Column 16, Lines 29 to 31, we
02:22 5 see the exact same caption language for Figure 8B
02:22 6 again, correct?

02:22 7 A. Correct.

02:22 8 Q. And repeating that caption once in the figures
02:22 9 and twice in the written description is the only
02:22 10 discussion in this patent relating to this integrated
02:22 11 chip scenario in the entire '768 patent, correct?

02:22 12 A. If you say so, yes. Uh-huh.

02:22 13 Q. You don't know of anything different?

02:22 14 A. Probably not. Uh-huh.

02:22 15 Q. And you'll agree with me that this is not a
02:22 16 very detailed description of the integrated chip; is
02:23 17 that fair?

02:23 18 A. Which integrated chip?

02:23 19 Q. This one depicted in Figure 8B.

02:23 20 A. Yes. It's not a detailed description.

02:23 21 MR. BURESH: Could we go back to Figure 5
02:23 22 of the first white paper, J-22?

02:23 23 BY MR. BURESH:

02:23 24 Q. During your direct, you said that your -- the
02:23 25 second part of your invention was this LVDS concept,

02:23 1 right?

02:23 2 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:23 3 Q. So you had the modular computer on the one
02:23 4 hand and the LVDS interface on the -- as a second part?

02:23 5 A. Yes.

02:23 6 Q. Okay. And your XP Bus that we've been talking
02:23 7 about for the last 20 minutes or so, that's based on
02:23 8 LVDS technology, correct?

02:23 9 A. Yes. Correct.

02:23 10 Q. You didn't invent LVDS technology, did you?

02:24 11 A. I did not.

02:24 12 Q. At the time of your invention, LVDS technology
02:24 13 was already a well-known technology that was being used
02:24 14 and promoted by a company called National
02:24 15 Semiconductor; isn't that correct?

02:24 16 A. Yes. They sold a chip for that. Yes.

02:24 17 Q. Yes. Right. It's commercially available.
02:24 18 You could buy LVDS chips off the shelf, right?

02:24 19 A. Right.

02:24 20 Q. And you learned about LVDS technology during
02:24 21 the approximately three weeks that you were writing
02:24 22 white papers for your invention, correct?

02:24 23 A. Yes.

02:24 24 Q. In fact, you cited a National Semiconductor
02:24 25 owner's manual in one of your white papers as a

02:24 1 reference, correct?

02:24 2 A. Correct.

02:24 3 MR. BURESH: Could you pull up D-950,

02:24 4 please?

02:24 5 BY MR. BURESH:

02:25 6 Q. Do you recognize this document, Dr. Chu?

02:25 7 A. I think so. Yes.

02:25 8 Q. What is it?

02:25 9 A. It's a National Semiconductor document. It

02:25 10 says: Design Guide. So it talks about LVDS.

02:25 11 MR. BURESH: Your Honor, I move to admit

02:25 12 D-950 into evidence.

02:25 13 MR. COLLARD: No objection.

02:25 14 THE COURT: It'll come into evidence.

02:25 15 BY MR. BURESH:

02:25 16 Q. All right. And, Dr. Chu, Exhibit D-950 is

02:25 17 titled an LVDS Owner's Manual, correct?

02:25 18 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:25 19 Q. Dated spring of 1997?

02:26 20 A. Yes.

02:26 21 Q. And just so we're keeping our time frame in
02:26 22 order, spring of 1997 was before you started your work
02:26 23 in Christmas of -- actually, Christmas of 1997,
02:26 24 correct?

02:26 25 A. Yes.

02:26 1 Q. I had to get it straight in my mind.

02:26 2 A. Yes.

02:26 3 Q. Okay. But this came before?

02:26 4 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:26 5 Q. And you were in possession of this LVDS
02:26 6 owner's manual when you were writing your white papers?

02:26 7 A. I think so.

02:26 8 Q. In fact, you principally gained your knowledge
02:26 9 of LVDS from this owner's manual, correct?

02:26 10 A. That's probably one of the documents. Yes.

02:26 11 Q. I'm sorry?

02:26 12 A. That's one of the documents. Yes.

02:26 13 Q. Now, the image on the front of the LVDS
02:26 14 owner's manual from National Semiconductor shows
02:26 15 something called TTL data being merged onto LVDS
02:27 16 channels, correct?

02:27 17 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:27 18 Q. And then on the other side, that data's being
02:27 19 converted back out to TTL, correct?

02:27 20 A. Correct.

02:27 21 Q. So they're taking in TTL data, converting it
02:27 22 into a LVDS channel, and reconverting it, correct?

02:27 23 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:27 24 MR. BURESH: If we could go to Page 5 of
02:27 25 this document, please.

02:27 1 BY MR. BURESH:

02:27 2 Q. Now, these LVDS --

02:27 3 MR. BURESH: If we could blow up the

02:27 4 "Save Money Too" section.

02:28 5 Thank you.

02:28 6 BY MR. BURESH:

02:28 7 Q. Now, this LVDS owner's manual is describing
02:28 8 its LVDS technology, and one of the things it says on
02:28 9 No. 2 there is high performance, correct?

02:28 10 A. Yes.

02:28 11 Q. That would mean faster in the computer space?

02:28 12 A. Yeah. Uh-huh. Of course.

02:28 13 Q. Yeah. So LVDS is -- National's LVDS
02:28 14 technology provided for faster data transfer, correct?

02:28 15 A. Yes.

02:28 16 Q. No. 3: LVDS consumes very little power,
02:28 17 correct?

02:28 18 A. Yes.

02:28 19 Q. So lower power consumption was a benefit of
02:28 20 National's LVDS technology, correct?

02:28 21 A. Yes.

02:28 22 Q. Let's go to No. 4. Low noise was another
02:28 23 benefit of National's LVDS technology, correct?

02:28 24 A. Correct.

02:28 25 Q. And those are the same benefits you described

02:29 1 during your opening testimony, correct?

02:29 2 A. Correct.

02:29 3 Q. So the benefits of your invention are the very
02:29 4 same benefits that were provided by a technology that
02:29 5 was put out by another company, National, called LVDS
02:29 6 technology.

02:29 7 Same exact benefits, right?

02:29 8 A. I think your statement is wrong. I believe I
02:29 9 never said I invented LVDS.

02:29 10 MR. BURESH: Could we go to the top of
02:29 11 Page 6, please?

12 BY MR. BURESH:

02:29 13 Q. Here, we have another depiction of National's
02:29 14 LVDS chip technology, correct?

02:29 15 A. Correct.

02:29 16 Q. And again, it's TTL on the left, but we see
02:29 17 that it has 21 or 28 channels, correct?

02:29 18 A. Yes.

02:29 19 Q. And then that is merged down to four or five
02:30 20 LVDS channels, correct?

02:30 21 A. Correct.

02:30 22 Q. And then it is back to 21 to 28 channels on
02:30 23 the other side, right?

02:30 24 A. Correct.

02:30 25 Q. So National's LVDS chips would be more cable

02:30 1 friendly because they require less wires, right?

02:30 2 A. Yes.

02:30 3 Q. So that benefit of your invention was

02:30 4 described by National as well, correct?

02:30 5 A. Again, that's common to any interconnect that
02:30 6 uses LVDS technology. Correct.

02:30 7 Q. And anybody that was using National's LVDS
02:30 8 chips would enjoy that benefit, right?

02:30 9 A. Correct.

02:30 10 Q. Now, if we look at this figure from the
02:30 11 National owner's manual, it's got data going in one
02:30 12 direction, right, which is that arrow in between?

02:30 13 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:30 14 Q. But it was well-known that if you wanted to go
02:31 15 in both directions, you just buy a second set of chips
02:31 16 and send the data the other way, right?

02:31 17 A. Yeah. That's, of course, correct. Uh-huh.

02:31 18 Q. And you'd have unidirectional data, right?

02:31 19 A. Yes.

02:31 20 Q. So National's LVDS technology also provided
02:31 21 for unidirectional data transfer, didn't it?

02:31 22 A. Yes. Of course. You can use it for that in
02:31 23 that fashion. Yes.

02:31 24 Q. So you weren't the first to come up with the
02:31 25 idea of using what National called LVDS. Having two

02:31 1 unidirectional data channels to transmit data in
02:31 2 opposite directions, that wasn't your invention either?

02:31 3 A. That is not my invention.

02:31 4 MR. BURESH: Could we go back to J-22,
02:31 5 Figure 5?

02:31 6 BY MR. BURESH:

02:32 7 Q. Now, you actually tried to build a chip for
02:32 8 the host interface controller to connect your XP Bus
02:32 9 up, correct?

02:32 10 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:32 11 Q. And that interface controller, you intended it
02:32 12 to practice your invention, correct?

02:32 13 A. Yes.

02:32 14 Q. The idea of the chip you tried to build -- the
02:32 15 one you tried to build would have PCI local bus on one
02:32 16 side and XP Bus or LVDS on the other, correct?

02:32 17 A. Yes.

02:32 18 Q. I believe you hired four engineers to help you
02:32 19 build your chip?

02:32 20 A. Two and a half for the chip.

02:32 21 Q. You ever tell me previously it was four?

02:32 22 A. Did I tell you previously it was four?

02:32 23 Well, I guess I count myself as an engineer.
02:33 24 I was part of the design.

02:33 25 Q. So you would make three and a half?

02:33 1 A. Well, I say half because one of them was a
02:33 2 consultant, was not full time.

02:33 3 Q. So somewhere -- two and a half, three, you
02:33 4 hired some engineers to help you build this chip,
02:33 5 correct?

02:33 6 A. Sure. Sure.

02:33 7 Q. And they worked on it for over a year?

02:33 8 A. Over a year. Uh-huh.

02:33 9 Q. After your design work on your chip, you sent
02:33 10 the design off to a chip fabricator to help you build
02:33 11 the chip, correct?

02:33 12 A. Correct.

02:33 13 Q. And I believe you have some of the results
02:33 14 remaining back. It was the wafer you were showing us?

02:33 15 A. Yes.

02:33 16 Q. And there's nothing on that wafer that works,
02:33 17 right?

02:33 18 A. Yes.

02:33 19 Q. Have you just kept them as a memento?

02:33 20 A. It's something that we spent a lot of time on.
02:33 21 I keep it for memento. Yeah. I can say that.

02:33 22 Q. And so once you got the mementos back from
02:34 23 TSMC, they did not work, just to be clear, correct?

02:34 24 A. Yes. I said that. Yes.

02:34 25 Q. There were no working signals, correct?

02:34 1 A. Correct.

02:34 2 Q. And you didn't know why it wasn't working?

02:34 3 A. We could not debug it properly. Yes.

02:34 4 Q. I'm sorry? You said --

02:34 5 A. We could not -- we don't have the capability
02:34 6 to debug it properly.

02:34 7 Q. So you didn't know why it wasn't working?

02:34 8 A. Okay. We did not.

02:34 9 MR. BURESH: Mr. Palisoul, could you pull
02:34 10 up D-1625, please?

02:34 11 BY MR. BURESH:

02:34 12 Q. Dr. Chu, do you recognize this document?

02:34 13 A. Yes. I do.

02:34 14 Q. Okay. And what is it?

02:35 15 A. It's a presentation presented for the board
02:35 16 meeting on July 26, 2000.

02:35 17 Q. Okay. And this was a board meeting that you
02:35 18 gave to -- on behalf of ACQIS, correct?

02:35 19 A. Oh, yes. Of course. Uh-huh.

02:35 20 MR. BURESH: Your Honor, I would move
02:35 21 D-1625 into evidence.

02:35 22 MR. COLLARD: No objection.

02:35 23 THE COURT: Admitted.

02:35 24 MR. BURESH: If we could go to Slide 6,
02:35 25 please.

02:35 1 BY MR. BURESH:

02:35 2 Q. So here you were in a board meeting, you were
02:35 3 describing that the ASIC development would be
02:35 4 discontinued, correct?

02:36 5 A. Yes.

02:36 6 Q. And just to be clear, the ASIC was another
02:36 7 name for your interface controller, correct?

02:36 8 A. Correct.

02:36 9 Q. Now, you told the board that the ASIC, your
02:36 10 invention, is "inefficient in power and performance."
02:36 11 Do you see that?

02:36 12 A. Yes.

02:36 13 Q. You mentioned below that bullet point that the
02:36 14 ASIC had "long PCI latency delay," correct?

02:36 15 A. Yes. I did.

02:36 16 Q. You believe that your interface controller
02:36 17 chip, your design of it, would actually cause delay in
02:36 18 the transmission, correct?

02:36 19 A. It would cause delay. Yes.

02:36 20 Q. Because any time you introduce a device that's
02:36 21 doing conversions between two buses, you're going to
02:36 22 increase latency or delay, aren't you?

02:36 23 A. Yes.

02:36 24 Q. Now, you didn't say anything about here that
02:36 25 you didn't have money to continue your development.

02:37 1 That wasn't what you told the board of
02:37 2 directors, correct?

02:37 3 A. It's not on this slide, but certainly they
02:37 4 know.

02:37 5 Q. But it's not on this slide?

02:37 6 A. Well, but it's part of the presentation.

02:37 7 Q. You're talking about technical problems,
02:37 8 aren't you?

02:37 9 A. Here, yes. Of course. Uh-huh.

02:37 10 Q. Now, you never went back and tried to figure
02:37 11 out how to get your chip for your XP Bus working; isn't
02:37 12 that correct?

02:37 13 A. We didn't have the funding I mentioned.

02:37 14 Q. I mean, at no time in the future. We've seen
02:37 15 some big numbers floating around about settlements
02:37 16 you've taken.

02:37 17 You never went back and tried to get it to
02:37 18 work even after you had money, did you?

02:37 19 A. You're talking about a huge time difference.
02:37 20 This was in 2000.

02:37 21 Q. I'm just asking a question.

02:37 22 You never went back and tried to get your XP
02:37 23 Bus to work, did you?

02:37 24 A. At that point in time, there was industry
02:37 25 standard. It was not for me to actually change that

02:37 1 anymore.

02:37 2 Q. So the answer is no. You didn't try to get
02:38 3 your XP Bus to work ever at any point in the future,
02:38 4 correct?

02:38 5 A. I did not.

02:38 6 Q. In fact, in these devices we have here, you
02:38 7 removed the XP Bus entirely, correct?

02:38 8 A. Yes. I said that. Uh-huh.

02:38 9 Q. And the only time you got your modular system
02:38 10 to work in a way that you could sell it was when you
02:38 11 did not include your LVDS channel idea, correct?

12 A. Correct.

02:38 13 Q. Now, we've talked about PCI some.

02:38 14 You remember there was also the USB peripheral
02:38 15 bus on Figure 5 --

02:38 16 A. Yes.

02:38 17 Q. -- of J-22.

02:38 18 A. There was.

02:38 19 Q. Now, you never even tried to build a chip that
02:38 20 would communicate USB over your XP Bus; is that right?

02:38 21 A. That's right.

02:38 22 Q. Never even attempted it?

02:38 23 A. No.

02:38 24 Q. In fact, you didn't even actually think about
02:39 25 how to design or implement carrying USB over your XP

02:39 1 Bus. You never even thought about the design of that,
02:39 2 did you?

02:39 3 A. How can you say that? It's in my description
02:39 4 of the patent.

02:39 5 Q. I'll ask you the question again.

02:39 6 You didn't think about how to design and how
02:39 7 to implement sending USB over the LVDS bus, correct?
02:39 8 That's my question.

02:39 9 A. Say it again, please.

02:39 10 Q. You did not think about how to design and how
02:39 11 to implement sending USB over the LVDS bus; is that
02:39 12 correct?

02:39 13 A. I did not go and study the USB specification
02:39 14 and try to do a design to convert -- in those days
02:39 15 would be the USB 2.0 or 1.0 -- and put it through my
02:39 16 bus. But what I did respond I had just now, I have
02:40 17 shown in my patent description to say those are slow
02:40 18 buses. So if you need to do that, you can pass it
02:40 19 through the XP Bus.

02:40 20 MR. BURESH: All right. Let's pull up
02:40 21 June 8th, 2022 transcript.

02:40 22 BY MR. BURESH:

02:40 23 Q. Were you -- excuse me.

02:40 24 Were you deposed in a proceeding on June 8th?

02:40 25 A. Yes. Of course. Uh-huh.

02:40 1 MR. BURESH: Sorry. It's June 8th, 2022.

02:41 2 BY MR. BURESH:

02:41 3 Q. Can you see the deposition on the screen in
02:41 4 front of you, Dr. Chu?

02:41 5 A. Yes.

02:41 6 Q. Were you deposed on June 8th, 2022?

02:41 7 A. Yes.

02:41 8 MR. BURESH: Okay. If we could go to
02:41 9 Page 75, starting at Line 7, please.

02:41 10 Page 75.

02:41 11 BY MR. BURESH:

02:41 12 Q. I'm going to give you a second to review this
02:41 13 portion of your transcript, Dr. Chu, and then I'm going
02:41 14 to ask you the question again. All right?

02:41 15 A. Sure. Uh-huh.

02:41 16 Q. You didn't think about how to design and how
02:41 17 to implement sending USB over the LVDS bus, correct?

02:42 18 MR. COLLARD: Objection, Your Honor, to
02:42 19 improper impeachment. He actually gave an answer
02:42 20 that's close to what was the answer here.

02:42 21 MR. BURESH: It's not even in the
02:42 22 ballpark.

02:42 23 THE COURT: Could I hear the question
02:42 24 again?

02:42 25 MR. BURESH: Yes.

1 BY MR. BURESH:

02:42 2 Q. You didn't think about how to design and how
02:42 3 to implement sending USB over the LVDS bus, correct?

02:42 4 THE COURT: And your objection is?

02:42 5 MR. COLLARD: Improper impeachment.

02:42 6 THE COURT: Overruled.

02:42 7 BY MR. BURESH:

02:42 8 Q. Can you answer the question?

02:42 9 A. Yes. If you look at the answer, I said -- I
02:42 10 said it's possible. I did not think about the design.

02:42 11 What I mean by that --

02:42 12 Q. And I don't need an explanation.

02:42 13 THE COURT: He just asked you to respond
02:42 14 to the question.

02:42 15 THE WITNESS: Oh, okay.

02:42 16 THE COURT: You may continue.

02:42 17 BY MR. BURESH:

02:42 18 Q. You didn't figure out how to actually go and
02:42 19 do it, correct?

02:42 20 A. Correct.

02:42 21 Q. You didn't do the design work for USB,
02:42 22 correct?

02:42 23 A. The design work for the USB circuitry.
02:43 24 Correct.

02:43 25 Q. All you said was it's possible?

02:43 1 A. It's possible to send through the XP Bus.

02:43 2 Yes.

02:43 3 Q. So to summarize --

02:43 4 MR. BURESH: You can go back to the
02:43 5 exhibit now.

02:43 6 BY MR. BURESH:

02:43 7 Q. So to summarize, you could not get PCI local
02:43 8 bus working over your XP Bus, correct?

02:43 9 A. Correct.

02:43 10 Q. You didn't try to implement your XP Bus with
02:43 11 USB, correct?

02:43 12 A. Correct.

02:43 13 Q. Now, sitting here today, I believe you
02:43 14 testified that if you just tried hard enough, you'd get
02:43 15 your XP Bus working or something to that effect, right?

02:43 16 A. Yes.

02:43 17 Q. But you can't say for sure that your XP Bus
02:43 18 would even work, can you?

02:43 19 A. Why do you say that?

02:43 20 Q. Because actions speak louder than words.
02:43 21 You never got it working, did you?

02:43 22 A. I didn't have the time to prove my action.

02:43 23 Q. Now, after you went ahead and built your
02:44 24 modular computer system with the PCI local bus as the
02:44 25 connection, you did sell some, correct?

02:44 1 A. Yes.

02:44 2 Q. But you wouldn't consider that to be
02:44 3 commercially successful, correct?

02:44 4 A. No.

02:44 5 Q. In fact, you didn't make enough money to keep
02:44 6 your business going, correct?

02:44 7 A. Correct.

02:44 8 Q. Since 2004, you have not developed any
02:44 9 products, correct?

02:44 10 A. Yes. We sold the hardware business.

02:44 11 Q. I'm sorry?

02:44 12 A. We sold the hardware business.

02:44 13 Q. So since 2004, you have not developed any
02:44 14 products at all, correct?

02:44 15 A. Correct.

02:44 16 Q. And since 2004, you have not sold any
02:44 17 products, correct?

02:44 18 A. Correct.

02:44 19 Q. So for about the past 20 years, ACQIS has not
02:44 20 built or sold a single product, correct?

02:44 21 A. Correct.

02:44 22 Q. Now, once you stopped trying to build products
02:45 23 in 2004, you shifted gears, right, with your business?

02:45 24 A. Yes. Yes.

02:45 25 Q. In fact, you changed your company name just

02:45 1 slightly, from LLC to Inc. or vice versa. I can't
02:45 2 remember which way you went. You can tell me.

02:45 3 A. We did not change the company name.

02:45 4 Q. You didn't?

02:45 5 A. We had a subsidiary as LLC.

02:45 6 Q. Okay. And you focused on licensing, correct?

02:45 7 A. Correct.

02:45 8 Q. That was your full business going forward, was
02:45 9 trying to license your patents?

02:45 10 A. Correct.

02:45 11 Q. Okay. Now, you showed us a lot of licenses,
02:45 12 right?

02:45 13 A. Yes.

02:45 14 Q. Now, every one of those was really a
02:45 15 settlement agreement; isn't that correct?

02:45 16 A. What do you mean?

02:45 17 Q. I mean that every one of those that you showed
02:45 18 us was a settlement agreement to resolve a lawsuit that
02:45 19 you brought; isn't that correct?

02:46 20 A. You used the term "settlement agreement."

02:46 21 Q. Uh-huh.

02:46 22 MR. COLLARD: Objection, Your Honor. Can
02:46 23 we approach?

02:46 24 THE COURT: Sure.

02:46 25 (Bench conference.)

02:46 1 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, it seems to be
02:46 2 going right up to your motion in limine talking about
02:46 3 litigations. We avoided that on our direct. We
02:46 4 avoided opening the door to that issue, and now he's
02:46 5 asking him about them all being from litigation.

02:46 6 THE COURT: I think he's just trying to
02:46 7 make the point of how they arrived at these.

8 MR. COLLARD: Correct.

02:46 9 THE COURT: And you're correct that all
02:46 10 of them were a result of either respect to litigation
02:46 11 or --

02:46 12 MR. COLLARD: They were all the result of
02:46 13 litigation. Every single one.

02:46 14 THE COURT: That's just a fact.

02:46 15 MR. COLLARD: Okay. Thank you.

02:46 16 (Bench conference concludes.)

02:46 17 BY MR. BURESH:

02:46 18 Q. Every single agreement that you entered with
02:47 19 all those companies we saw on the screen, they were the
02:47 20 settlement of a lawsuit that you brought, correct?

02:47 21 A. Correct.

02:47 22 Q. So in the 20 years that you've been trying to
02:47 23 license your patents, there's never been a single
02:47 24 company that's come to you and said, oh, Dr. Chu. We
02:47 25 really love your idea for an X bus. Can we use your

02:47 1 technology?

02:47 2 Never been one of those, right?

02:47 3 A. Nobody wants to talk to us. Yes.

02:47 4 Q. So you've sued a lot of companies, correct?

02:47 5 A. Correct.

02:47 6 Q. And many of those companies that you've sued
02:47 7 have settled, correct?

02:47 8 A. You just said that. Yes.

02:47 9 Q. So it's correct?

02:47 10 A. Correct.

02:47 11 Q. It's a fact, isn't it, that when you sue
02:47 12 companies, many will enter a settlement agreement just
02:47 13 to avoid the time and expense of the litigation without
02:48 14 any admission of liability or fault. Isn't that a
02:48 15 fact?

02:48 16 MR. COLLARD: Objection. Foundation,
02:48 17 Your Honor.

02:48 18 THE COURT: Overruled.

02:48 19 A. I cannot speak to what the other companies are
02:48 20 thinking of when they license our patents. There are
02:48 21 small amounts and there are large amounts. It is not
02:48 22 for me to say whether it's because of legal costs or
02:48 23 other reason.

02:48 24 MR. BURESH: Okay. Let's pull up Joint
02:48 25 Exhibit 52, which has been previously admitted.

1 Did you publish that already? Thank you.

02:49 2 Could you zoom in on the first "whereas"

02:49 3 clause, Mr. Palisoul?

02:49 4 BY MR. BURESH:

02:49 5 Q. So it's not for you to say why companies

02:49 6 settle.

02:49 7 Is that your answer previously?

02:49 8 A. Yes. It's the other party's decision.

02:49 9 Q. But you actually say in some of your

02:49 10 settlement agreements that the parties are currently

02:49 11 engaged in the litigation, and to avoid the time and

02:49 12 expense of the litigation and without any admission of

02:49 13 liability or fault, the parties desire to enter a full,

02:49 14 final, complete, and global settlement, correct?

02:49 15 A. First of all, this is --

02:49 16 Q. Is that what the document says?

02:49 17 A. That's what the document said.

02:49 18 Q. And this is a settlement agreement, is it not?

02:49 19 A. But you have to understand who wrote this

02:49 20 settlement agreement.

02:49 21 THE COURT: No, no, no, no. You answer

02:50 22 his question.

02:50 23 THE WITNESS: Okay.

02:50 24 THE COURT: If your lawyer wants to have

02:50 25 you explain it, he can.

02:50 1 A. Please ask the question again. Yep.

02:50 2 BY MR. BURESH:

02:50 3 Q. My question was: This is a settlement
02:50 4 agreement, correct?

02:50 5 A. It's a patent licensing agreement. Correct.

02:50 6 Q. It is a settlement and license agreement,
02:50 7 correct?

02:50 8 A. Yes. Both.

02:50 9 Q. Okay. And we're seeing here the desire of the
02:50 10 parties is to end the litigation; isn't that correct?

02:50 11 A. Yes. It is. Uh-huh.

02:50 12 Q. Okay. That's what was said in this formal
02:50 13 document, correct?

02:50 14 A. Correct.

02:50 15 MR. BURESH: Can we pull up P-925,
02:50 16 please?

02:51 17 (Off-the-record discussion.)

02:51 18 BY MR. BURESH:

02:51 19 Q. Dr. Chu, you used this document in your direct
02:51 20 testimony, correct?

02:51 21 A. Correct. Uh-huh.

02:51 22 Q. Now, every one of these companies on this
02:51 23 slide in front of us offered modular computers for
02:51 24 sale, correct?

02:51 25 A. Yes. That's the time when we had our first

02:51 1 activity on licensing.

02:51 2 Q. So every one of these companies is doing
02:51 3 modular computing?

02:51 4 A. Yes. That's because we had at that time only
02:52 5 modular computing patents.

02:52 6 Q. And my clients aren't doing modular computing,
02:52 7 right?

02:52 8 A. I don't think so.

02:52 9 Q. So we're not quite situated the same as these
02:52 10 companies; isn't that fair?

02:52 11 A. Well, you have to look at the time frame.
02:52 12 This is --

02:52 13 Q. I'm just saying, we're not doing modular
02:52 14 computing. They are. We're not situated the same way
02:52 15 as they are, correct?

02:52 16 A. We are not situated the way they are in 2010.
02:52 17 Yes.

02:52 18 MR. BURESH: Now, you can take this down
02:52 19 now.

02:52 20 BY MR. BURESH:

02:52 21 Q. When companies do pay settlement agreements or
02:52 22 enter settlement agreements with you, Dr. Chu, and they
02:52 23 pay some dollars to get out of their lawsuit, you take
02:52 24 a big chunk of that change, right?

02:52 25 A. Do you mean me myself?

02:52 1 Q. I mean you as your company. Yes.

02:52 2 A. As a company, of course we take a percentage
02:52 3 of the settlement. Yes.

02:52 4 Q. And you're the largest shareholder of your
02:52 5 company, right?

02:52 6 A. Yes. I am.

02:52 7 Q. So if these companies settle after you sue
02:53 8 them, you stand to personally profit from every one of
02:53 9 those, right?

02:53 10 A. As an aggregate, when we do have money
02:53 11 remaining in the company, we certainly would distribute
02:53 12 to our hundred shareholders, and I'm one of them. Yes.

02:53 13 Q. Now, let me ask -- I'll give you an open-ended
02:53 14 one, okay? It won't have "correct" at the end.

02:53 15 Would you agree with me that it wouldn't be
02:53 16 fair to take credit for things you don't invent?

02:53 17 A. Yes.

02:53 18 Q. Okay. I'm going to go through a few things
02:53 19 here that are inside of my client's computers, all
02:53 20 right?

02:53 21 You didn't invent a CPU?

02:53 22 A. No.

02:53 23 Q. You didn't invent a graphics processing
02:53 24 subsystem, right?

02:53 25 A. No.

02:53 1 Q. So you shouldn't get credit for that?

02:53 2 A. It's for the damage expert to decide.

02:54 3 Q. I'm just -- you agree with me that you
02:54 4 shouldn't get credit for what you don't invent. You've
02:54 5 said you don't invent a graphics processing unit; ergo,
02:54 6 you shouldn't get credit for the graphics processing
02:54 7 unit, right?

02:54 8 A. If the graphics processing unit uses the bus I
02:54 9 invented, certainly there would be credit.

02:54 10 Q. You didn't invent RAM, which is a type of
02:54 11 memory, correct?

02:54 12 A. Correct.

02:54 13 Q. You didn't invent a hard drive for a computer,
02:54 14 correct?

02:54 15 A. Correct.

02:54 16 Q. You didn't invent SSD memory or persistent
02:54 17 memory, correct?

02:54 18 A. Correct.

02:54 19 Q. You didn't invent flash memory?

02:54 20 A. Correct.

02:54 21 Q. You didn't invent a circuit board, correct?

02:54 22 A. Correct.

02:54 23 Q. You didn't invent a battery, right?

02:54 24 A. Correct.

02:54 25 Q. You didn't invent a power supply for a

02:54 1 computer?

02:54 2 A. Correct.

02:54 3 Q. You didn't invent a new case for a computer,
02:54 4 like the outer shell, correct?

02:54 5 A. Correct.

02:55 6 Q. So you wouldn't get credit for any of those
02:55 7 things I just listed, correct?

02:55 8 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I object to
02:55 9 vague as to credit. I'm not really sure what the
02:55 10 question is.

02:55 11 THE COURT: Are you objecting, you think
02:55 12 your witness doesn't know what "credit" means?

02:55 13 MR. COLLARD: Okay. I don't know if he
02:55 14 knows in the context --

02:55 15 THE COURT: If he would like to ask what
02:55 16 "credit" means, he can; otherwise, I'm going to
02:55 17 overrule the objection.

02:55 18 A. If the computer system is using my invention,
02:55 19 which is the bus I mentioned, and if the computer
02:55 20 system would not work without that invention, then the
02:55 21 question is: If you cannot sell the computer without
02:55 22 that invention, then the -- then the computer -- the
02:55 23 whole computer is going to be sold based on the
02:55 24 invention.

02:55 25 So there would be credit if it's required for

02:55 1 my invention to work.

02:55 2 BY MR. BURESH:

02:55 3 Q. So you would get credit for a battery because
02:56 4 it's sold, because you allege that they're using LVDS,
02:56 5 that you should get credit for a battery.

02:56 6 Is that your testimony?

02:56 7 A. That's not what I'm saying.

02:56 8 Q. Okay.

02:56 9 A. If they -- can I continue on that?

02:56 10 Q. No. That's fine. Your attorney can take his
02:56 11 time to ask you again if he'd like, all right?

02:56 12 You weren't involved in the development of PCI
02:56 13 Express at all, correct?

02:56 14 A. No. I wasn't involved.

02:56 15 Q. Or USB -- any version of USB, you weren't
02:56 16 involved in the development of that either?

02:56 17 A. I was not.

02:56 18 Q. Okay. You weren't even aware of PCI Express
02:56 19 until it was publicly announced in 2003, correct?

02:56 20 A. Yes. Of course. Uh-huh.

02:56 21 Q. And PCI was -- PCI Express was in wide use
02:56 22 after 2003, wasn't it?

02:56 23 A. If it become an industry standard, yes.

02:56 24 Q. It kind of took off like wild fire, right?

02:56 25 A. It took off. Yes.

02:56 1 Q. You aware that ASUSTeK was using PCI Express
02:56 2 by 2004?

02:57 3 A. I don't think at 2004, but at a later date,
02:57 4 yes.

02:57 5 Q. You've testified that you believe you've
02:57 6 invented some aspects of PCI Express; is that fair?

02:57 7 A. Yes.

02:57 8 Q. Okay. And you realized that once you saw the
02:57 9 announcement of PCI Express in 2003 or 2004?

02:57 10 A. Yes. Uh-huh.

02:57 11 Q. But you didn't go to ASUSTeK at that point and
02:57 12 say, you might be infringing?

02:57 13 A. Remember what I said earlier, that --

02:57 14 Q. Did you go to ASUSTeK at that point and say,
02:57 15 you might be infringing?

02:57 16 A. I did not have the patent to go to ASUSTeK at
02:57 17 the time.

02:57 18 Q. Okay. It took you -- from the time PCI
02:57 19 Express was released, it took you 14 years to send a
02:57 20 letter to ASUSTeK, correct?

02:57 21 A. It took me only two years after I have the
02:58 22 asserted patents to go tell ASUSTeK.

02:58 23 Q. You had 30 patents, right?

02:58 24 A. Not all patents would apply to ASUSTeK.

02:58 25 Q. Okay. Now, let me just ask you this: If

02:58 1 someone trespassed on your property, like the barbed
02:58 2 wire fence that we saw during your counsel's opening,
02:58 3 they cut your fence down, would you go immediately as
02:58 4 soon as you learned about it and say something?

02:58 5 A. "Immediate" is a relative term. We have to
02:58 6 gather the proper resource and situation to really take
02:58 7 a company -- basically to file a suit against a company
02:58 8 or...

02:58 9 So it is not a simple process of if I know
02:58 10 somebody, I would right away be able to notify that
02:58 11 company.

02:58 12 Q. It sounded pretty easy during your direct.
02:58 13 You just looked up on the Internet and it said that
02:58 14 ASUSTeK was using PCI Express, boom.

02:59 15 A. Yes.

02:59 16 Q. Pretty easy, right?

02:59 17 A. Given the resources we had, the most important
02:59 18 thing is for our company or myself to send a letter to
02:59 19 notify ASUSTeK, hoping that they would talk to us. So
02:59 20 that is really the start of the damage in terms of
02:59 21 patent -- violating our patent rights.

02:59 22 Q. So on -- the letter you sent was on May 15th
02:59 23 of 2018, correct?

02:59 24 A. Correct.

02:59 25 Q. That was one year before your patents started

02:59 1 expiring, correct?

02:59 2 A. Yes.

02:59 3 Q. To the day?

02:59 4 A. I guess.

02:59 5 Q. Yeah.

02:59 6 But that timing, that pending expiration of
02:59 7 your patents didn't have anything to do with why you
02:59 8 sent them a letter?

02:59 9 A. No.

02:59 10 Q. Okay. It just happened to be on the one-year
02:59 11 pre-anniversary?

02:59 12 A. I didn't even consider that.

02:59 13 Q. Okay. "Expired" means your patents are
02:59 14 running out of life, correct?

02:59 15 A. "Expired" means any product that's built after
03:00 16 that date, you have no rights to.

03:00 17 Q. Because you get 20 years of patent life,
03:00 18 right?

03:00 19 A. Correct.

03:00 20 Q. And you did your invention back in 1998, 1999,
03:00 21 right?

03:00 22 A. Yes.

03:00 23 Q. So your 20 years was up?

03:00 24 A. Correct.

03:00 25 Q. Sitting here today, your 20 years has been up

03:00 1 for a while now, right?

03:00 2 A. Yes.

03:00 3 Q. Now, you testified that ASUSTeK didn't respond
03:00 4 to your letter, correct?

03:00 5 A. Yes.

03:00 6 Q. You have no idea whether anyone at ASUSTeK
03:00 7 ever read your letter, do you?

03:00 8 A. No idea.

03:00 9 Q. You never followed up with them with another
03:00 10 letter or an e-mail?

03:00 11 A. I did not.

03:00 12 Q. You didn't pick up the phone and try to call
03:00 13 somebody?

03:00 14 A. I did not.

03:00 15 Q. In your letter, you never told them, I think
03:00 16 you're infringing, did you?

03:00 17 A. I think I did.

03:00 18 Q. You didn't use those words?

03:01 19 A. It's just a word.

03:01 20 Q. It's a word. And I'm asking, did you say that
03:01 21 word in your letter?

03:01 22 A. I did not say that word for ASUSTeK.

03:01 23 Q. You didn't tell them to stop using PCI Express
03:01 24 or USB 3, did you?

03:01 25 A. I just asked them to talk to us.

03:01 1 Q. You never told them you were going to sue
03:01 2 them, right?

03:01 3 A. If I don't say they infringe, of course I
03:01 4 haven't said that I would sue them. Yes.

03:01 5 Q. After your letter in May of 2018, you waited
03:01 6 for two more years before you filed a lawsuit, correct?

03:01 7 A. Correct.

03:01 8 Q. You waited until after your patents expired to
03:01 9 file your lawsuit, correct?

03:01 10 A. I didn't wait for anything. It was -- it
03:01 11 takes time for us to collect the resource to file the
03:01 12 lawsuit.

03:01 13 Q. What's the filing fee to file a lawsuit in
03:01 14 this court? Do you know?

03:01 15 A. Could you say that again?

03:02 16 Q. What's the filing fee to file a lawsuit in
03:02 17 this court? Do you know?

03:02 18 A. It's -- I'm not talking about that.

03:02 19 Q. Oh. Because it's like, what, 150 bucks?

03:02 20 A. As I said, I'm not talking about that.

03:02 21 MR. BURESH: Pass the witness, Your
03:02 22 Honor.

03:02 23 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

03:02 24 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:02 25 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Chu.

03:02 1 A. Good afternoon.

03:02 2 Q. Let's just start right where you left off.

03:02 3 You said that you weren't talking about the filing fee
03:02 4 of a lawsuit when you were saying that. You had to --
03:02 5 that -- when you were talking about the cost to file a
03:02 6 lawsuit, what were you talking about?

03:02 7 A. To be able to have maybe the guts or the
03:02 8 financial resource to file a lawsuit, even before you
03:02 9 go to court, it costs a lot of money. It costs what we
03:03 10 call out-of-pocket expense. It costs legal fees.
03:03 11 Because you have to go through depositions, testimony,
03:03 12 discovery. So it's a very expensive process. So we
03:03 13 don't take it lightly.

03:03 14 And what I meant was when I sent out the
03:03 15 letter in 2018, I sent out to 18 companies, not just
03:03 16 ASUSTeK. That's just one of them. And it took me a
03:03 17 long time to find a partnership in a law firm to be
03:03 18 able to say, okay. I'm willing to handle your case.
03:03 19 In fact, it took me a lot of time to find the financing
03:03 20 for it.

03:03 21 And two years is really not that long because
03:03 22 we filed -- at the same time when we filed lawsuit
03:03 23 against ASUSTeK, we already have filed three lawsuits
03:03 24 before that. And together with ASUSTeK, we filed
03:04 25 another four companies. It took a huge amount of

03:04 1 resource to do that. So --

03:04 2 Q. But, Dr. Chu, do you like to litigate, or do
03:04 3 you want to avoid litigation?

03:04 4 A. We try to avoid litigation very much. As you
03:04 5 see, in terms of settlements we got, we --

03:04 6 Q. So you looked at that Lenovo settlement for a
03:04 7 little bit with Mr. Buresh.

03:04 8 Do you recall that?

03:04 9 A. Yes.

03:04 10 Q. Is -- does Lenovo make computers like ASUS?
03:04 11 Do you know if they're a competitor of ASUS?

03:04 12 A. Lenovo is even -- is actually what you will
03:04 13 see today as the IBM laptops. They bought the
03:04 14 business. So they are actually very large in U.S.

03:04 15 Q. So do you know what they settled that case
03:04 16 for?

03:04 17 A. They settled for, I believe, [REDACTED]

03:04 18 Q. Okay. Is that settlement -- you do know how
03:04 19 much litigation costs.

03:04 20 Was that settlement, is that sort of just
03:05 21 calculated to whatever the litigation costs would be,
03:05 22 they would pay you that instead?

03:05 23 A. No. Even though coming to court costs a lot
03:05 24 of money, typically the assumption is anywhere from 3
03:05 25 to \$5 million. [REDACTED]

03:05 1



03:05 2 Q. Okay. Were the patents at issue in that
03:05 3 settlement with Lenovo, were they similar to the
03:05 4 patents that were at issue here?

03:05 5 A. Yes. They were.

03:05 6 Q. Okay. And did Lenovo have an opportunity in
03:05 7 that -- in that case to evaluate the patents and get
03:05 8 their own experts and do all sorts of litigation?

03:05 9 A. They actually challenged the patent in the
03:05 10 Patent Office. Even ASUSTeK did.

03:05 11 Q. Let's --

03:05 12 MR. BURESH: Your Honor, move to strike
03:05 13 that answer.

03:05 14 THE COURT: Why?

03:05 15 MR. BURESH: Because we don't get to talk
03:05 16 about other proceedings like that.

03:05 17 THE COURT: Overruled.

03:06 18 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:06 19 Q. So even after doing all those things and
03:06 20 having their own expert and challenging the patent, did
03:06 21 they -- did Lenovo settle after doing those things?

03:06 22 A. Yes.

03:06 23 Q. Did -- of the other settlements on that
03:06 24 demonstrative 920 or that Exhibit 920, did they do the
03:06 25 same thing? They had the chance to look at the patents

03:06 1 and test them and get their own experts and their own
03:06 2 evaluations before they settled?

03:06 3 A. Any large computer companies with the resource
03:06 4 we're talking about, these are companies with billions
03:06 5 of dollars in revenue. They certainly would look at
03:06 6 the patent and try to challenge it. That's why I said
03:06 7 our patent was being challenged many times. And --

03:06 8 Q. Okay. Oh, sorry. Go ahead.

03:06 9 A. And so they know. A company knows whether a
03:06 10 patent has value. Otherwise, they would not pay for
03:07 11 it. They are not certainly lack of money to fight.

03:07 12 Q. Dr. Chu, there's a lot of discussion about the
03:07 13 modular aspects of your computer with Mr. Buresh.

03:07 14 Do you remember that discussion?

03:07 15 A. Yes.

03:07 16 Q. Okay. And I want to try to explain that a
03:07 17 little more because I want to talk about a word that
03:07 18 came up a little bit in the patent video but we haven't
03:07 19 talked about.

03:07 20 Can you explain to the jury what an embodiment
03:07 21 of your invention is, Dr. Chu?

03:07 22 A. An embodiment is just a description of one of
03:07 23 the ways of using, in this case, the computer bus.

03:07 24 Q. Okay. And over the life of all of your
03:07 25 patents, you said there were over 30.

03:07 1 Were there different embodiments in different
03:07 2 patents and different claims?

03:07 3 A. Embodiment is just to tell the patent examiner
03:08 4 this is one way you can do it. But what I would like
03:08 5 to add is if you look at our claim, the claim can --
03:08 6 can claim that the bus has been used more than once in
03:08 7 a computer system. Because once you have invented a
03:08 8 bus, nothing really prevents you from using it more
03:08 9 than once.

03:08 10 So please do not feel that because the
03:08 11 description itself doesn't talk about the bus being
03:08 12 used in two different places. I certainly, as an
03:08 13 inventor, have a right to say this bus can be used in
03:08 14 this situation. Plus in the same computer, I can use
03:08 15 the bus in another situation.

03:08 16 Q. Let's -- Dr. Chu, let's try to let -- let's
03:08 17 look at something specific. I want to look at the
03:08 18 patent application you looked at -- or sorry -- the
03:08 19 issued patent you looked at with Mr. Buresh.

03:08 20 A. Yes.

03:08 21 Q. So he compared some parts of the white papers
03:08 22 with some parts of the patent application?

03:09 23 A. Yes.

03:09 24 Q. But does it sound right to you that J-23, the
03:09 25 first white paper that you were looking at, it's about

03:09 1 16 pages? Does that seem about right?

03:09 2 A. Okay. Yes.

03:09 3 Q. And then your patent application, let's -- or

03:09 4 sorry. Your issued patent '768 --

03:09 5 MR. COLLARD: Let's look at J-1.

6 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:09 7 Q. And I think that this is said to be two pages.

03:09 8 So was there more information in your patent

03:09 9 than there was in the original white paper, even if

03:09 10 some parts of the white paper made their way into the

03:09 11 patent?

03:09 12 A. I mentioned that most of the invention that is

03:09 13 contained --

03:09 14 Q. Sorry. Is that -- can you answer my question

03:09 15 yes or --

16 A. Oh, sorry.

03:09 17 Q. Like, can you -- if you -- it's okay if you

03:09 18 need to explain, but first, will you say yes or no?

03:09 19 A. Yes. Yes.

03:09 20 MR. COLLARD: Okay. So let's look at

03:09 21 J-1, please.

03:09 22 Oh, I have to do my things.

03:09 23 This is admitted.

03:09 24 And I want to go -- let's start at

03:09 25 Page 15 because I think we know that the prior art went

03:10 1 through the first 14 pages. And then we started having
03:10 2 some of the figures.

03:10 3 So, Vicki, would you please flip through
03:10 4 these pictures? Will you just flip a few pages ahead,
03:10 5 please?

03:10 6 Can you please -- I'm not seeing them.
03:10 7 If -- are you flipping a few pages ahead?

03:10 8 Okay. Thank you. And just keep going.
03:10 9 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:10 10 Q. So not all of these figures were in your white
03:10 11 paper, were they, sir?

03:10 12 A. No. These are some of the design work I did
03:10 13 after the white paper. So it's between January and
03:10 14 May, I provided the patent attorney more detail design
03:10 15 of my invention.

03:11 16 Q. Okay. Thank you.

03:11 17 MR. COLLARD: So we're up to about
03:11 18 Figure 28. We can stop there. And let's go to
03:11 19 Page 75.

03:11 20 Let's go to the last page then, and we'll
03:11 21 work back. 72. Sorry. So I want to go back till we
03:11 22 get to Claim 10. And then I want to blow up Claim 10
03:11 23 really big. It's on the left side.

03:11 24 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:11 25 Q. So Claim 10 is actually one of the asserted

03:11 1 claims in this case. And Mr. Buresh was asking you a
03:11 2 lot of different questions about what you invented.

03:11 3 But for the purposes of this case, what
03:11 4 describes your invention?

03:11 5 A. My invention in most of claims are described
03:11 6 in actually a few sentence.

03:12 7 Q. So what I'm really trying to ask, Dr. Chu, is
03:12 8 for the purposes of this case, do you need to prove
03:12 9 that ASUS is doing what you said in a white paper, or
03:12 10 do you need to prove that they are doing what is said
03:12 11 in the claim?

03:12 12 A. In the claim.

03:12 13 Q. In the claim.

03:12 14 A. Yes.

03:12 15 Q. All right. So let's look at this claim. And
03:12 16 it claims "a printed circuit board comprising."

03:12 17 Do you see that?

03:12 18 A. Yes.

03:12 19 Q. All right. Sir, you were talking a lot about
03:12 20 some of the modular components.

03:12 21 Is there anything in this claim that requires
03:12 22 bridging between something like a computer module and a
03:12 23 bay like this?

03:12 24 A. No. No.

03:12 25 Q. There's nothing -- there's nothing like that

03:12 1 in this claim?

03:12 2 A. No.

03:12 3 Q. Okay. And so this claim's talking about a
03:13 4 printed circuit board.

03:13 5 And did your modular computer, though, did it
03:13 6 have a printed circuit board inside of it?

03:13 7 A. Yes.

03:13 8 Q. Do servers have printed circuit boards inside
03:13 9 them?

03:13 10 A. Yes.

03:13 11 Q. What about laptops?

03:13 12 A. Yes.

03:13 13 Q. Desktops?

03:13 14 A. Yes.

03:13 15 Q. Phones?

03:13 16 A. Yes.

03:13 17 Q. Okay. So are you required in -- after you
03:13 18 invent something and write about it in white papers,
03:13 19 are you required for every claim to put in all the
03:13 20 different parts that you invented? Every time you make
03:13 21 a claim?

03:13 22 You have to put in the modular part. You have
03:13 23 to put in the bus.

03:13 24 Do you have to put in everything, or can you
03:13 25 have claims that are on parts of your invention?

03:13 1 A. You don't have to put in everything, of
03:14 2 course. You only put in the primary invention.

03:14 3 Q. You talked a lot about integration, and you
03:14 4 walked through the figures. And you said -- Mr. Buresh
03:14 5 said to you, Dr. Chu, are you integrating these two
03:14 6 things together and then these two things?

03:14 7 Do you remember that?

03:14 8 A. Yes.

03:14 9 Q. Okay. And then he said and showed you a
03:14 10 sentence that said: That integration didn't change the
03:14 11 modular aspect of your computer.

03:14 12 Do you remember that?

03:14 13 A. Yes.

03:14 14 Q. Did that integration change the computer bus
03:14 15 aspect of your invention?

03:14 16 A. Yes. Because it uses my invention.

03:14 17 Q. Okay. You were asked a lot of questions about
03:15 18 LVDS.

03:15 19 Do you recall that?

03:15 20 A. Yes.

03:15 21 Q. Did you mean for your invention to be the same
03:15 22 thing as the LVDS in TTL technology from National?

03:15 23 A. Yeah. LVDS is the technology that I was
03:15 24 using, and National Semiconductor was building two
03:15 25 chips to do a special connection with TTL signals.

03:15 1 But the one I'm trying to use in the computer
03:15 2 system is taking the PCI local bus, even though they
03:15 3 are also TTL signals, but it's far more complicated
03:15 4 than the TTL signal that's shown by National.

03:16 5 Q. Okay. And I want to go back to your early
03:16 6 patents for a second.

03:16 7 When we were talking about how you're -- the
03:16 8 patents you were choosing -- or you were choosing to
03:16 9 assert.

03:16 10 A. Yes.

03:16 11 Q. What were your early patents directed to?

03:16 12 A. The early group of patents I mentioned earlier
03:16 13 was -- has to have a modular computer. So every claim
03:16 14 would start off with a modular computer module and
03:16 15 console.

03:16 16 And so that was the first group of patents.
03:16 17 That also probably came up to about 10 or 11.

03:16 18 Q. Okay. Just a couple more things, Dr. Chu.

03:16 19 Let's go back to the very first page of this
03:16 20 document and the date on this. And we looked at this
03:16 21 during your direct examination.

03:16 22 And the date on this patent is December 27,
03:17 23 2016, almost the very end of 2016.

03:17 24 And can you enforce a patent before this
03:17 25 issued date?

03:17 1 A. No. I cannot. I don't have the patent
03:17 2 rights.

03:17 3 Q. Okay. And did this patent expire -- or I
03:17 4 don't know actually when this one expired, but around
03:17 5 2019 or 2020?

03:17 6 A. This one expired 2020.

03:17 7 Q. Okay. That's only four years.

03:17 8 Can you explain to the jury why this patent
03:17 9 only had four years between when it issued and when it
03:17 10 expired when they heard on the video that you usually
03:17 11 get closer to 20 years?

03:17 12 And I think that that's something that
03:17 13 Mr. Buresh may have said too.

03:17 14 A. I only had the right to be able to get a new
03:17 15 patent on new claims that described -- that's described
03:17 16 in this patent based on the invention that I had in
03:18 17 1998.

03:18 18 So because in this particular case, it was
03:18 19 based on the patent I had in 20 -- sorry -- in 2000.
03:18 20 So that was the patent. And I cannot change the
03:18 21 content of what I have invented in any of these later
03:18 22 patents. You have to -- the Patent Office will only
03:18 23 allow you to claim things that was already in those
03:18 24 disclosures way early.

03:18 25 So as I said, I was awarded 30 patents. So

03:18 1 sequentially, I was working on each one of them. This
03:18 2 is one of the very late ones. So Patent Office allows
03:18 3 it because it all relates to the invention I did prior
03:18 4 to the 2000 time frame. But I only got four years left
03:18 5 because this 20 years of lifetime.

03:18 6 Q. Okay. Thank you, Dr. Chu.

03:19 7 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, I can be really
03:19 8 brief, but can we approach? I think it would be the
03:19 9 quickest way.

03:19 10 THE COURT: Sure.

03:19 11 (Bench conference.)

03:19 12 MR. COLLARD: Your Honor, sorry to go
03:19 13 around on this again, but Mr. Buresh asked if he
03:19 14 mentioned the word "infringe" in his letter. And he
03:19 15 does, but it's in the redacted section.

03:19 16 MR. BURESH: It's what?

03:19 17 MR. COLLARD: It does. It says they were
03:19 18 found liable for infringement. It says infringe.

03:19 19 THE COURT: He asked whether --

03:19 20 MR. BURESH: I asked whether --

03:19 21 (Simultaneous conversation.)

03:19 22 MR. COLLARD: Okay. Fine.

03:19 23 THE COURT: -- whether he accused the
03:19 24 defendant of infringing.

03:19 25 MR. BURESH: That was my question.

03:19 1 MR. COLLARD: All right. Thank you.

03:19 2 (Bench conference concludes.)

03:19 3 BY MR. COLLARD:

03:19 4 Q. Just one last thing then, Dr. Chu.

03:20 5 Do you remember when you were asked about what
03:20 6 words you used in your letter to ASUS that's Exhibit
03:20 7 P-50?

03:20 8 Do you recall that?

03:20 9 A. Yes.

03:20 10 Q. In your view, when you wrote the letter, did
03:20 11 you provide information to ASUS so that they could
03:20 12 understand that they were infringing your patents?

03:20 13 A. I personally think that I provide all the
03:20 14 information necessary for ASUS to determine whether
03:20 15 they infringe, because they are, you know, in a
03:20 16 multibillion dollar company. I told them what product
03:20 17 that they potentially infringe. I told them the ten
03:20 18 patents that I asked them to look at.

03:20 19 I make the job easier. I told them, look at
03:20 20 PCI Express. Look at USB 3.0. Look at the CPU you're
03:20 21 using, which is the Intel CPU.

03:20 22 So if they were serious about my letter, only
03:20 23 take probably -- not very long time for the engineering
03:21 24 people or their legal people to look at this and say,
03:21 25 this is a serious thing.

03:21 1 Because, you know, I mean, if they ever take a
03:21 2 letter seriously, they would know that it infringe,
03:21 3 because I know 100 percent they infringe. But to
03:21 4 not --

03:21 5 THE COURT: Why don't we move on to
03:21 6 another question?

03:21 7 MR. COLLARD: That's all I have, Your
03:21 8 Honor.

03:21 9 Thank you, Dr. Chu.

03:21 10 THE WITNESS: Okay. I'm done?

03:21 11 MR. BURESH: Nothing further, Your Honor.

03:21 12 THE COURT: Yes. You are done. He had
03:21 13 to say that before I could answer.

03:21 14 THE WITNESS: Okay. Thank you.

03:21 15 THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen of the
03:21 16 jury, let's take our afternoon recess -- well,
03:21 17 actually, your next witness is an expert?

03:21 18 MR. COLLARD: Yes, Your Honor.

03:21 19 THE COURT: Why don't you go ahead and
03:21 20 get him proven up, and then we'll -- that will let you
03:21 21 start with your direct.

03:21 22 MR. COLLARD: Okay. It'll be Mr. Hales.

03:22 23 MR. HALES: Plaintiff calls Dr. Nabil
03:22 24 Sarhan.

03:22 25 (The witness was sworn.)

DIRECT EXAMINATION

BY MR. HALES:

Q. Dr. Sarhan, welcome.

Will you please introduce yourself to the Court and the jury?

A. Yeah. My name is Nabil Sarhan, and I'm an associate professor of electrical and computer engineering at Wayne State University in Detroit, Michigan.

Q. Dr. Sarhan, did you move to the United States from another country?

A. Yes.

Q. Which one?

A. From Jordan.

Q. Why did you move to the United States?

A. The United States is -- the United States is well-known for the best universities in the world. My brother who's 12 years older than me came to the United States before me for his Ph.D. at Virginia Tech.

Since I was 13, I realize that my best opportunity to learn and grow is to do the same. So I joined Penn State University, where I completed my master's and Ph.D. degrees in computer science and engineering.

Q. Thank you.

03:24 1 Are you a citizen of the United States?

03:24 2 A. Yes.

03:24 3 Q. Since what time?

03:24 4 A. 2011.

03:24 5 Q. Okay. And do you have a family here?

03:24 6 A. Yes.

03:24 7 Q. Will you tell us a little bit about them?

03:24 8 A. Yeah. I'm married with six kids, ages 2 to
03:24 9 14.

03:24 10 Q. Be sure to thank your wife for loaning you to
03:24 11 us this week.

03:24 12 Dr. Sarhan, have you prepared some slides to
03:24 13 support our discussion today?

03:24 14 A. Yes. As a professor, I try my best to explain
03:24 15 things in the easiest way possible for the jury to
03:24 16 understand.

03:24 17 Q. Are we looking at the title of the slide deck?

03:24 18 A. Yes.

03:24 19 Q. Okay. Would you please describe your
03:24 20 educational background for the jury?

03:24 21 A. Yeah. I have a slide about that.

03:24 22 So I have -- I got my bachelor of science
03:24 23 degree in electrical engineering, and then I got my
03:24 24 master's and Ph.D. degrees in computer science and
03:25 25 engineering from Pennsylvania State University.

03:25 1 I'm an associate professor of electrical and
03:25 2 computer engineering at Wayne State University. I'm
03:25 3 also the director of Wayne State computer systems and
03:25 4 deep learning research lab. I'm also the director of
03:25 5 the masters of science degree in artificial
03:25 6 intelligence.

03:25 7 Q. What does one do to secure degrees in computer
03:25 8 science and computer engineering?

03:25 9 A. Yeah. So basically, you need to have
03:25 10 experience in both the hardware and software aspects.
03:25 11 To get the Ph.D., you have to do a lot of research in
03:25 12 the field.

03:25 13 Q. I see some of your study here is on deep
03:25 14 learning.

03:25 15 Can you help the jury understand what deep
03:25 16 learning is?

03:25 17 A. Yes. So deep learning is a way to achieve
03:25 18 artificial intelligence. For example, like when you
03:25 19 interact like with Siri, you ask questions to Siri.
03:25 20 Basically, Siri uses the information that it learned
03:26 21 previously in order to answer the question. So it was
03:26 22 trained using deep learning techniques in order to
03:26 23 learn these tasks that you ask her to do.

03:26 24 Q. Did you write a dissertation as part of your
03:26 25 Ph.D.?

03:26 1 A. Yes.

03:26 2 Q. Will you please tell the jury about that
03:26 3 dissertation?

03:26 4 A. Yeah. I basically investigated how to design
03:26 5 large scale computer systems to support multimedia
03:26 6 applications, including video streaming. I developed
03:26 7 new solutions to support huge number of users at the
03:26 8 same time.

03:26 9 Q. Can you give them a more, I guess, tactile
03:26 10 understanding of what this is and whether it's in use
03:26 11 today?

03:26 12 A. Yeah. So at that time, people questioned why
03:26 13 would anyone watch a movie on the Internet? They have
03:26 14 like best store. They have all these other store.
03:26 15 They can just go to the store, rent a DVD. Why would
03:26 16 anyone rather watching a movie over the Internet?

03:26 17 Now, of course we have Netflix, we have
03:27 18 YouTube. We have all these online video streaming
03:27 19 services.

03:27 20 Q. Great.

03:27 21 What did you do after your dissertation and
03:27 22 graduation from your Ph.D. program?

03:27 23 A. I immediately joined Wayne State University as
03:27 24 a faculty member.

03:27 25 Q. And what year was this?

03:27 1 A. 2003.

03:27 2 Q. Okay. In what department did you join Wayne
03:27 3 State?

03:27 4 A. Electrical and computer engineering.

03:27 5 Q. Do you teach any courses at Wayne State?

03:27 6 A. Yeah. Sure. And I have a slide about that.

03:27 7 So I teach a variety of undergraduate and
03:27 8 graduate courses in computer engineering. I teach
03:27 9 computer architecture, advanced computer architecture,
03:27 10 computer networking and network programming. I teach a
03:27 11 scalable and secure Internet services and
03:27 12 architectures, among other courses.

03:27 13 Q. Okay. I want to back up on that timeline just
03:27 14 a little bit. The patents, as we've heard from
03:27 15 Dr. Chu, were applied for in the kind of 1999/2000
03:27 16 frame.

03:27 17 Did you consider yourself at this time a
03:27 18 person of ordinary skill in the field of computer
03:28 19 science and computer engineering?

03:28 20 A. Yes.

03:28 21 Q. Why?

03:28 22 A. So I already finish a five-year bachelor of
03:28 23 science degree in electrical engineering at that time.
03:28 24 And then I, like, work in the industry for a little
03:28 25 while, and then I joined a master degree program where

03:28 1 I, like -- like basically taught -- like, I learned all
03:28 2 of -- took all the courses, and I almost done with my
03:28 3 master thesis back in -- back in Jordan. And also, I
03:28 4 sub as a teaching assistant, and I was supervising
03:28 5 teaching labs there.

03:28 6 Q. Tell me about supervising and teaching in
03:28 7 labs. What would that entail?

03:28 8 A. So basically, I was a teaching assistant, and
03:28 9 part of my duty was to, like, teach -- teach -- be in
03:28 10 control of the whole lab, to teach different labs in
03:28 11 computer engineering.

03:28 12 Q. Okay. Let's return, I guess, in the timeline
03:28 13 back to after you joined Wayne State.

03:28 14 What professional activities have you
03:28 15 undertaken while being a professor there?

03:29 16 A. Yes. I have a slide about that.

03:29 17 I published more than 50 refereed research
03:29 18 papers in computer science and engineering, including
03:29 19 those in the top venues in the field. I have a
03:29 20 patent -- a U.S. patent on Automated Video Surveillance
03:29 21 Systems.

03:29 22 I served as a chair of almost 20 international
03:29 23 accreditation panels for undergraduate programs and
03:29 24 universities.

03:29 25 I also served as the chair of the Interest

03:29 1 Group on Media Streaming. This is one interest group
03:29 2 within IEEE. And I served as associate editor of some
03:29 3 fun, prestigious journal in the field.

03:29 4 Q. I want to revisit a couple of these.

03:29 5 What does it mean for a paper to be refereed?

03:29 6 A. "Refereed," it means like before it can be
03:29 7 accepted, it has to be reviewed by peers. And then
03:29 8 they will decide whether the quality of the paper is
03:29 9 high enough and novel to be accepted or not.

03:29 10 Q. Can you provide the jury with a couple of
03:30 11 examples of the types of areas of research you've
03:30 12 engaged in?

03:30 13 A. Yeah. I have engaged in multiple research
03:30 14 projects, and I have a slide that shows only two of
03:30 15 them.

03:30 16 Basically, one of the -- like here, we can see
03:30 17 in the slide here, like, basically, there are two
03:30 18 projects that I worked on.

03:30 19 One of them is regard to -- is about the
03:30 20 design of automated video surveillance systems for
03:30 21 automatic detection of the threats, which will allocate
03:30 22 resources dynamically in the best way possible to
03:30 23 various cameras and video sources in such a way that it
03:30 24 will optimize the threat detection accuracy without any
03:30 25 human intervention.

03:30 1 And here I have a picture with the -- some of
03:30 2 my Ph.D. students who helped me design and develop this
03:30 3 automated video surveillance system. This project was
03:30 4 sponsored by the National Science Foundation.

03:30 5 Another project has to do -- which I'm showing
03:31 6 here a little bit about it -- has to do with designing
03:31 7 a computer chip and a computer system for epileptic
03:31 8 seizure prediction. The system would actually predict
03:31 9 epileptic seizures before they happen.

03:31 10 Q. And that's with the use of computer chips?

03:31 11 A. Yes.

03:31 12 Q. Okay. Is that also funded by NSF or --

03:31 13 A. This is like while we're still working on it.

03:31 14 Q. Okay. I saw earlier that you're an inventor
03:31 15 on a U.S. patent.

03:31 16 Will you introduce the jury to that patent?

03:31 17 A. Yeah. I have a slide about that.

03:31 18 So I have a patent on the design of Automated
03:31 19 Video Surveillance Systems. Again, the system
03:31 20 optimally recognizes the threats, detects the threats
03:31 21 without any human intervention and allocate resources
03:31 22 to different sources to different cameras in such a way
03:31 23 that it will maximize the threat detection accuracy.

03:31 24 Q. Have you received any awards, Dr. Sarhan, in
03:31 25 the field of computer engineering?

03:31 1 A. Yes. I received the -- multiple awards,
03:32 2 including I have recently been inducted to Wayne State
03:32 3 University Academy of Teachers. I received the Wayne
03:32 4 State University President's Award for Excellence in
03:32 5 Teaching. And I received an Outstanding Professional
03:32 6 of the Year award from IEEE.

03:32 7 Q. Thank you.

03:32 8 Have you ever been retained as an expert
03:32 9 witness in other technology and computer-related cases?

03:32 10 A. Yes.

03:32 11 Q. How many?

03:32 12 A. About ten, I would say.

03:32 13 Q. Have you ever testified as an expert witness
03:32 14 in a patent dispute?

03:32 15 A. Yeah. I testified once. Actually, I appeared
03:32 16 in this same court two years ago, also with Judge
03:32 17 Albright.

03:32 18 Q. Have you ever been rejected by a Court as an
03:32 19 expert witness?

03:32 20 A. No.

03:32 21 Q. Thank you.

03:32 22 Let's discuss your involvement in this case.
03:32 23 Were you hired as an expert witness in this
03:32 24 case?

03:32 25 A. Yes.

03:32 1 Q. By whom?

03:32 2 A. ACQIS.

03:32 3 Q. Are you compensated for your analysis and
03:32 4 testimony in this case?

03:32 5 A. Yes.

03:32 6 Q. Does your compensation depend in any way on
03:33 7 the outcome of the case or the content of your
03:33 8 opinions?

03:33 9 A. No.

03:33 10 Q. What were you asked to do in this case?

03:33 11 A. So I was asked to study the patents at issue
03:33 12 this case and then look at the accused products,
03:33 13 investigate the accused product, and see whether the
03:33 14 accused products infringe the asserted claims of the
03:33 15 patents.

03:33 16 Q. Did you also analyze the validity of the
03:33 17 asserted patents?

03:33 18 A. Yes. I reviewed the defendants' expert
03:33 19 witness reports on invalidity, and I responded to these
03:33 20 reports.

03:33 21 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we tender
03:33 22 Dr. Sarhan as an expert witness in computer science and
03:33 23 computer engineering to evaluate accused products for
03:33 24 potential infringement and the patents for issues of
03:33 25 validity.

03:33 1 MR. BURESH: No objection.

03:33 2 THE COURT: He'll be admitted as an
03:33 3 expert.

03:33 4 Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we'll
03:33 5 take our afternoon recess. Please remember my
03:33 6 instructions not to discuss the case as well as the
03:33 7 other instructions. We'll be back in 10 or 15 minutes.

03:33 8 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

03:34 9 (Jury exited the courtroom.)

03:34 10 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be
03:34 11 seated.

03:34 12 And I'm not going to hold you to this.

03:34 13 (Off-the-record discussion.)

03:35 14 (Recess taken.)

03:52 15 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

03:52 16 THE COURT: Please remain standing for
03:52 17 the jury.

03:52 18 (Jury entered the courtroom.)

03:53 19 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be
03:53 20 seated.

03:53 21 Counsel?

03:53 22 BY MR. HALES:

03:53 23 Q. Dr. Sarhan, I'd just like to point out for the
03:53 24 record, I delivered in the break four binders of
03:53 25 various trial exhibits, and then two other binders I

03:53 1 don't think the jury can see. They're in your footwell
03:53 2 just because we ran out of space.

03:53 3 I count four. Are there not two more of your
03:53 4 expert report itself?

03:53 5 A. Yes.

03:53 6 Q. Okay.

03:53 7 A. Here.

03:53 8 Q. Very good. You can put that back. Let's
03:53 9 return to the discussion where we left off.

03:53 10 Why did you decide to serve as an expert
03:53 11 witness in this case?

03:53 12 A. Computer systems -- computer systems and data
03:53 13 communication are my main areas of research and
03:53 14 expertise. I also have experience in both the hardware
03:54 15 and software aspects.

03:54 16 I'm also passionate about computer technology
03:54 17 and how it evolved over time. And as a professor, I
03:54 18 hope to teach the jury about the patents and the
03:54 19 technologies at issue in this case.

03:54 20 Q. Thank you.

03:54 21 How did you go about performing your analysis
03:54 22 in this case? What materials did you review?

03:54 23 A. So the core of my analysis relies on the
03:54 24 patents themselves.

03:54 25 Q. Is that what we see on the screen here?

03:54 1 A. Yes. We have these five patents.

03:54 2 Q. How did you analyze these patents?

03:54 3 A. Initially, it took me a long time to review
03:54 4 these patents. They are lengthy. They have a lot of
03:54 5 figures, detailed disclosure.

03:54 6 So the -- and then like after that, since one
03:54 7 of them, like, seems to be, like, representative of the
03:54 8 others, I focused on one patent, the '768 patent. And
03:54 9 I read that multiple times during the course of this
03:54 10 case.

03:55 11 Q. For purposes of your testimony today, would a
03:55 12 discussion of the '768 patent represent the contents of
03:55 13 the other patents as well?

03:55 14 A. Yes.

03:55 15 Q. Okay. Can you provide the jury with a
03:55 16 high-level overview of the contents of the '768 patent?

03:55 17 A. So the patent basically describes the state of
03:55 18 computers or computer technology in the late 1990s.
03:55 19 And they -- they describe the main limitations of one
03:55 20 technology, which is referred to as the PCI local bus,
03:55 21 at that time.

03:55 22 And then the patents disclose a solution or
03:55 23 solutions to address these limitations while
03:55 24 maintaining compatibility with operating system and
03:55 25 application software.

03:55 1 Q. And we'll get into that in greater detail.

03:55 2 What other materials have you consulted to
03:55 3 form your opinions in this case?

03:55 4 A. So I also reviewed the industry publications
03:55 5 about the patents that are discussed by the patents
03:55 6 themselves or disclosed by these patents.

03:56 7 Q. And for the jury's benefit, what is an
03:56 8 industry publication or an industry standard?

03:56 9 A. Yeah. Basically, an industry publication is a
03:56 10 set of requirements that must be followed by the
03:56 11 members of the industry in order to have -- in order to
03:56 12 achieve compatibility between related products.

03:56 13 To give an idea to the jury, the HDMI port on
03:56 14 your TV is industry standard. And this is why you can
03:56 15 use any cable -- any HDMI cable manufactured by any
03:56 16 company. You can plug it into your computer -- your TV
03:56 17 and it's going to work.

03:56 18 Q. What do we see here on our screen, Dr. Sarhan?

03:56 19 A. So here we see three of the industry standards
03:56 20 that I reviewed. The first one is the PCI Local Bus
03:56 21 implementation. The second one is the PCI Express Base
03:56 22 Specification. And the third one is the Universal
03:56 23 Serial Bus 3.0 Specification.

03:56 24 I also reviewed different iterations or
03:57 25 revisions of these standards.

03:57 1 Q. Okay. Is that to say you reviewed these three
03:57 2 specifications we see on the screen?

03:57 3 A. Yes.

03:57 4 Q. Okay. What did you do after studying the
03:57 5 patents and these industry standards?

03:57 6 A. So after that, I studied the accused products
03:57 7 and -- to determine -- and also the related
03:57 8 technologies to determine whether these products
03:57 9 infringe the asserted claims of the patents.

03:57 10 Q. What documents or other materials did you
03:57 11 review to perform this analysis?

03:57 12 A. Yeah. So I basically reviewed the ASUS
03:57 13 product specifications for the computers. Also, I
03:57 14 reviewed the ASUS user manuals. And I also viewed
03:57 15 other documents that are produced by ASUS and third
03:57 16 parties, including Intel and AMD, which manufacture the
03:57 17 processors that ASUS use in their computers.

18 Q. Have you reviewed any witness testimony in
03:57 19 this case?

03:57 20 A. Yes.

03:57 21 Q. What, at a high level, has that testimony
03:58 22 taught you?

03:58 23 A. So I reviewed the deposition testimony by ASUS
03:58 24 employees. They spoke generally about how the products
03:58 25 are designed and manufactured.

03:58 1 Q. How many ASUS products are accused of
03:58 2 infringement in this case?

03:58 3 A. To my last count, it's 576 products.

03:58 4 Q. Did you study each one of these, Dr. Sarhan?

03:58 5 A. Yes.

03:58 6 Q. Will we be analyzing each of these products in
03:58 7 court today?

03:58 8 A. Not directly.

03:58 9 Q. How many products will we discuss today?

03:58 10 A. We will be discussing only two products today.

03:58 11 Q. Okay. I'd like for you, if you can, to
03:58 12 introduce the jury to the different categories of
03:58 13 products that exist and introduce them to the
03:58 14 representative products that we'll discuss today.

03:58 15 Why don't you start with the laptops that we
03:58 16 see here on the screen?

03:58 17 A. So we have laptops, desktops, servers, and
03:58 18 motherboards.

03:58 19 So laptops are basically portable -- yeah --
03:59 20 portable computers. They come with the screen, with
03:59 21 the keyboard, with the track pad, with battery. And
03:59 22 those are the type of computers that the lawyers are
03:59 23 using right now in the court.

03:59 24 Q. Before you go on, Dr. Sarhan, I see you
03:59 25 actually have a specific name for this, this laptop.

03:59 1 Is this one of the representative laptops
03:59 2 we'll be discussing today?

03:59 3 A. Yes.

03:59 4 Q. Okay. And what -- which of the 500-odd
03:59 5 accused products will this representative laptop
03:59 6 represent?

03:59 7 A. Yeah. So this specific product will represent
03:59 8 all laptop products.

03:59 9 Q. Okay. I see a desktop quadrant here in this
03:59 10 image.

03:59 11 Can you introduce the jury to desktop
03:59 12 products?

03:59 13 A. Yeah. We said laptops are portable. Desktops
03:59 14 are stationary, are not portable computers. They are
03:59 15 pretty much the computers that the jury might have at
03:59 16 home.

03:59 17 They come -- they may be purchased with
03:59 18 separate keyboards, monitors, and other peripheral
03:59 19 devices. Sometimes they may come in the form of a
04:00 20 all-in-one computer.

04:00 21 Q. What is an all-in-one computer?

04:00 22 A. An all-in-one computer is basically a computer
04:00 23 that has all the computer components, and those would
04:00 24 be integrated with the monitor, so it looks more like,
04:00 25 you know, one big monitor.

04:00 1 Q. Kind of like Apple famously has those
04:00 2 all-in-one desktop?

04:00 3 A. Yes.

04:00 4 Q. Okay. And I see you've named this one as
04:00 5 well.

04:00 6 Is that to say that this is another one of our
04:00 7 representative products?

04:00 8 A. Yes.

04:00 9 Q. Okay. Which products -- I guess which accused
04:00 10 products will this product represent for purposes of
04:00 11 your infringement analysis?

04:00 12 A. Sure. It represents all desktops, all
04:00 13 servers, and all motherboards.

04:00 14 Q. Let's introduce the jury to these last two
04:00 15 product categories that will be represented by the
04:00 16 desktops.

04:00 17 What is a server?

04:00 18 A. A server is -- you can think about it as a
04:00 19 high-performance computer that's used generally by the
04:00 20 industries such as banks to process transactions very
04:00 21 fast or to process a huge amount of information. And
04:01 22 those generally do not come with the -- like, the --
04:01 23 with the peripheral devices.

04:01 24 Q. Do they come with -- so when you say
04:01 25 "peripheral devices," is that to say they don't come

04:01 1 with, like, screens and keyboards and mice?

04:01 2 A. Yeah. That's right.

04:01 3 Q. And motherboards, will you introduce the jury
04:01 4 briefly to those?

04:01 5 A. Motherboards, basically a motherboard is the
04:01 6 main circuit board that we have inside any computer
04:01 7 product. So it's going to have a main circuit board
04:01 8 that has basically the -- it holds the different chips,
04:01 9 the different components that we have within the
04:01 10 computer and connects them together.

04:01 11 For example, here, we can see this
04:01 12 motherboard. And see here, we have a slot for -- where
04:01 13 we can insert the CPU. And here we have other slots
04:01 14 where we can insert the system memory. So it holds all
04:01 15 the main computer components together.

04:01 16 Q. Okay. At a very high level, what did you do
04:01 17 to perform your infringement analysis for the products
04:01 18 we see on the screen here?

04:01 19 A. Yeah. So basically what I did is that I
04:02 20 looked at the -- at the features of these products, and
04:02 21 then I see whether they meet the claim limitations of
04:02 22 the asserted patents.

04:02 23 Q. "Claim limitation" is a term you just used.
04:02 24 Will you introduce the jury to the concept of claim
04:02 25 limitations?

04:02 1 A. A claim limitation, like, generally at the end
04:02 2 of each patent, the inventor will have a list of
04:02 3 claims. A claim describes the specific technology or
04:02 4 product or computer that the inventor regards as his or
04:02 5 her invention.

04:02 6 Q. Dr. Sarhan, what patent claims are asserted in
04:02 7 this matter?

04:02 8 A. Yeah. I believe I have a slide about that.
04:02 9 So here we have three apparatus claims, and we
04:02 10 have four method claims.

04:02 11 Q. What is an apparatus claim?

04:02 12 A. An apparatus claim is a claim that describes a
04:02 13 physical product such as a computer.

04:02 14 Q. What is a method claim?

04:03 15 A. A method claim describes the process that's
04:03 16 used to manufacture physical products.

04:03 17 Q. Do I understand that right, it's steps to be
04:03 18 followed to manufacture a product but not actually a
04:03 19 claim on the product itself?

04:03 20 A. Exactly.

04:03 21 Q. Okay. Have you reached any opinions about
04:03 22 whether the accused products in this case infringe the
04:03 23 claims we see on the screen here?

04:03 24 A. Yeah. I believe that the accused products,
04:03 25 they must demonstrate infringement of the asserted

04:03 1 claims of the patents.

04:03 2 Q. Is that reflected on Slide 12, Dr. Sarhan?

04:03 3 A. Yes.

04:03 4 Q. Thank you.

04:03 5 Will you please open your exhibit binder, the
04:03 6 first one, to Joint Exhibits 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 and
04:03 7 confirm that those are the patents asserted in this
04:03 8 case?

04:03 9 A. Yes. These are the asserted patents.

04:03 10 Q. As I said earlier, I'd like to focus on the
04:03 11 discussion of the '768 patent, if you agree to that?

04:04 12 A. Yes.

04:04 13 Q. Dr. Sarhan, who is the named inventor of the
04:04 14 '768 patent?

04:04 15 A. Dr. William Chu.

04:04 16 Q. And how far back do these patents reach in
04:04 17 time as their priority date or kind of their invention
04:04 18 date?

04:04 19 A. Yeah. So we see that here that they reach
04:04 20 back to basically Year 2000.

04:04 21 Q. Okay. What do these patents describe?

04:04 22 A. Basically, they describe the state of computer
04:04 23 technology in the late 1990s, and they discuss the
04:04 24 limitations -- they disclose the limitations of the PCI
04:04 25 local bus specification. And then they -- basically

04:04 1 they -- the patents describe solutions that will fix
04:04 2 these problems.

04:04 3 Q. What solutions do these patents describe to
04:04 4 problems that existed in the computer field at this
04:04 5 time?

04:04 6 A. Yeah. So basically, the main problem was
04:04 7 related to PCI local -- PCI local bus. And the --
04:05 8 like, the patents basically describe a way in which
04:05 9 this -- basically, the PCI local bus limitation can be
04:05 10 addressed.

04:05 11 Initially, the patents disclosed a portable
04:05 12 module that Dr. Chu showed the -- an ACM, as we can see
04:05 13 in this screen. So this is the ACM or the attached
04:05 14 computer module.

04:05 15 This attached computer module can be inserted.
04:05 16 It's in the office console, and then it will function
04:05 17 as a regular computer. Then the user can take -- later
04:05 18 on, the user can take this with him or her home and
04:05 19 plug it in there, and he or she can resume work
04:05 20 instantly from the place where they left off when they
04:05 21 were at the office.

04:05 22 Q. Dr. Sarhan, we'll get to the specifics of the
04:05 23 patent claims in a bit, but do any of the patent claims
04:05 24 asserted in this case claim this attached computer
04:05 25 module idea?

04:05 1 A. No.

04:05 2 Q. Okay. What do the claims actually at issue in
04:06 3 this case focus on?

04:06 4 A. Yeah. They focus basically on the -- like,
04:06 5 addressing the limitation of the PCI local bus.

04:06 6 (Clarification by Reporter.)

04:06 7 A. So the patents describe that the use of this
04:06 8 module was not possible without -- with the existing
04:06 9 computer bus technology at that time.

04:06 10 BY MR. HALES:

04:06 11 Q. Okay. And we're going to introduce very
04:06 12 quickly the jury to the idea of a computer bus.

04:06 13 What is that?

04:06 14 A. Yeah. A computer bus is basically an
04:06 15 interconnect that connects different computer
04:06 16 components and devices together. It includes the wires
04:06 17 on which the data will be transferred. Also, it
04:06 18 includes any necessary software to do that.

04:06 19 Q. Is there a specific computer bus that these
04:06 20 patents sought to improve?

04:06 21 A. Yes. It's the PCI local bus specification.

04:06 22 Q. Are you familiar with the PCI local bus
04:07 23 specification?

04:07 24 A. Of course.

04:07 25 Q. How so?

04:07 1 A. I read it very well and...

04:07 2 Q. Okay. Did you have prior familiarity with it
04:07 3 before you got involved in this case?

4 A. Yes.

04:07 5 Q. Okay. How so?

04:07 6 A. Yeah. While I was a Ph.D. student, like a
04:07 7 graduate student, like I -- we learned about the PCI
04:07 8 local bus.

04:07 9 Q. Okay. Will you please turn to Exhibit J-42 in
04:07 10 your binder and confirm that that is a copy of the PCI
04:07 11 local bus standard?

04:07 12 A. Yes.

04:07 13 Q. Have you studied this in the course of forming
04:07 14 your opinions in this case?

04:07 15 A. Yes.

04:07 16 Q. Have you formed -- I'm sorry.

04:07 17 Have you studied other iterations or
04:07 18 generations of the PCI local bus standard as well?

04:07 19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Okay.

04:07 21 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we offer J-42
04:07 22 into evidence.

04:07 23 MR. BURESH: No objection.

04:07 24 THE COURT: Admitted.

04:07 25 BY MR. HALES:

04:07 1 Q. Dr. Sarhan, at a high level, what is the PCI
04:07 2 local bus standard?

04:07 3 A. Basically, the PCI local bus is an industry
04:08 4 standard that describes a parallel bus that sends data
04:08 5 on parallel. And I might have a slide about that.

04:08 6 So we see here -- we have -- on this slide we
04:08 7 have one peripheral device, and here we have another
04:08 8 device. And these two devices communicate to each
04:08 9 other through the bus, which is what you see in the
04:08 10 middle. So this is the interconnection between these
04:08 11 two devices.

04:08 12 Q. Nabil -- I'm sorry, Dr. Sarhan. I'm being too
04:08 13 familiar given our circumstances.

04:08 14 If you're trying to tell us straight, it's not
04:08 15 coming through on our screens.

04:08 16 A. Oh, you cannot see that it's --

04:08 17 Q. We cannot. No.

04:08 18 A. Okay.

04:08 19 THE WITNESS: Also the jury, you cannot
20 see? You can see it?

21 (Brief off-the-record discussion.)

04:08 22 BY MR. HALES:

04:08 23 Q. I can't see it on mine. How fortunate for
04:08 24 everyone else. I'll tune in to your guys' screens.

04:08 25 Please proceed, Dr. Sarhan.

04:08 1 A. Yeah. So we have like on the left -- on the
04:08 2 right, we have two devices, and these two devices are
04:08 3 interconnected with the -- with the -- basically the
04:08 4 PCI local bus, which is in the middle. We see all
04:08 5 these wires. These are parallel wires.

04:08 6 So the data will be transferred on --

04:09 7 (Clarification by Reporter.)

04:09 8 A. So the data will be transferred in parallel
04:09 9 across all these wires.

04:09 10 BY MR. HALES:

04:09 11 Q. Will you please describe how -- well, first,
04:09 12 what we're looking at, and then how the PCI local bus
04:09 13 operates with regard to this image?

04:09 14 A. Yeah. Sure. So this begins from the PCI
04:09 15 local bus specification that we described a little bit
04:09 16 ago. And here I added some limitation just to explain
04:09 17 the principles.

04:09 18 So we see here we have different computer
04:09 19 components. We have the processor, we have the
04:09 20 graphics card, we have the local area network device
04:09 21 that connects the computer like to the network such as
04:09 22 the Internet.

04:09 23 The processor is the main -- like you can
04:09 24 think about it as the brain of the computer. It's the
04:09 25 part that executes instructions.

04:09 1 The graphics card is basically the device that
04:09 2 prepares the graphics that you guys can now see on the
04:10 3 screen. So all these graphics that you see is prepared
04:10 4 by the graphics card.

04:10 5 Q. And is that the --

04:10 6 A. Or the CPU.

04:10 7 Q. And is that the PCI local bus we see in the
04:10 8 middle is that two-sided arrow?

04:10 9 A. Exactly. And here we see the -- in the middle
04:10 10 we see the PCI local bus. And you see the main
04:10 11 purpose, the main goal of the PCI local bus is to
04:10 12 connect all these components together.

04:10 13 Q. What are some important characteristics of the
04:10 14 operation of the PCI local bus that you think the jury
04:10 15 should understand for purposes of your analysis?

04:10 16 A. Sure. I prepared a slide about that that
04:10 17 shows the main characteristics.

04:10 18 So one of them is parallel transmission. It
04:10 19 requires a large amount of wires. It's a shared bus.
04:10 20 It's bidirectional, but it can be used only in one
04:10 21 direction at a time. And it uses single-sided
04:10 22 signaling with either 3.3 or 5 volts.

04:10 23 Q. I'd like to take these one by one, if we can.

04:10 24 What does it mean that the PCI local bus
04:11 25 utilizes parallel transmission?

04:11 1 A. Yeah. I have a slide to describe this.

04:11 2 As you see here, we have data. And this data
04:11 3 is sent on parallel on all these wires. In reality
04:11 4 what can happen with the PCI local bus, we can have
04:11 5 either 32 or 64 data wires. So these wires can be
04:11 6 either 32 or 64, and the data will be sent on all these
04:11 7 wires at the same time.

04:11 8 As we see here, we have these bits, 0, 1, 1.
04:11 9 And a bit here, we see it's 0 or 1. This bit -- a bit
04:11 10 is the smallest unit of information in the computer.
04:11 11 So the smallest will be one bit, which could either be
04:11 12 the value zero or the value would be one.

04:11 13 Q. And was this the prevailing approach that the
04:11 14 PCI used in the late '90s?

04:11 15 A. That's right.

04:11 16 Q. Okay. Are there any disadvantages to this
04:11 17 type of signaling scheme?

04:11 18 A. Yeah. And I have a slide about that.

04:11 19 So parallel transmission has some major
04:12 20 issues. First, it uses lots of wires, as we described
04:12 21 before. It needs a lot of space also. It's very hard
04:12 22 to mount these wires on the motherboard. Also, it
04:12 23 suffers from a crosstalk --

04:12 24 Q. What is crosstalk?

04:12 25 A. -- crosstalk problem.

04:12 1 So here, we see like when we have data are
04:12 2 transmitted on adjacent wires. So basically, data
04:12 3 transmission on one wire may impact the transmission of
04:12 4 adjacent wires.

04:12 5 To give an example, if a jury member is in a
04:12 6 busy cafeteria and you try to speak with the -- trying
04:12 7 to have a conversation with a friend, it's very easy to
04:12 8 miss something your friend mentioned because a lot of
04:12 9 people are talking at the same time in a closed space.

04:12 10 And this is what's happening here, but it's
04:12 11 going to be even worse.

04:12 12 Q. I see a final point here on your slide, timing
04:12 13 skew.

04:12 14 What is that and why is it significant?

04:12 15 A. Yeah. So see here, like those in the
04:13 16 animation, like we saw these bits going all the way
04:13 17 from the left to the right or from the right to the
04:13 18 left, all of them in parallel.

04:13 19 In real life, it's very hard for these bits to
04:13 20 arrive exactly at the same time. And this is basically
04:13 21 the time skew and give us -- it gives designers a lot
04:13 22 of problem.

04:13 23 Q. Okay. How many wires are we talking about
04:13 24 employed in PCI Express? How many were utilized?

04:13 25 A. Yeah. I have a slide about this. And this

04:13 1 slide is from the PCI local bus specification that we
04:13 2 discussed earlier.

04:13 3 Here, it shows one -- a certain device, one
04:13 4 called PCI-compliant device. This is a PCI device that
04:13 5 implements this specification.

04:13 6 And we see on the left, we have different
04:13 7 wires that are required and shows the required pins,
04:13 8 which are the required wires. And you can see it will
04:13 9 have 47-plus wires.

04:13 10 Some of these wires, see here like this one is
04:13 11 the address/data lines. And here, those are by
04:14 12 themselves 32 wires.

04:14 13 (Clarification by Reporter.)

04:14 14 A. So those by themselves are 32 wires.

04:14 15 On the right side, we have optional pins. And
04:14 16 those -- in some implementations, 32 bits may not be
04:14 17 sufficient, so we have to go with 64 bits for the
04:14 18 address and data bits. And we can get like, you know,
04:14 19 in that case approximately 100 wires.

04:14 20 BY MR. HALES:

04:14 21 Q. For the jury's benefit, do you consider
04:14 22 requiring anywhere from 47 to 80 pins or wires to be a
04:14 23 lot for a computer bus standard?

04:14 24 A. Yes.

04:14 25 Q. What downsides are there to that requirement?

04:14 1 A. It's not going to be cable friendly, as --
04:14 2 like we're going to discuss later on. Also, the
04:14 3 connector will be, like, bigger. It's going to have a
04:14 4 lot of issues.

04:14 5 Q. I saw the term "shared" on your earlier slide.
04:14 6 What does it mean for a bus to be a shared
04:14 7 bus?

04:14 8 A. Yeah. I have a slide to illustrate the
04:15 9 concept.

04:15 10 You see here the process of sending data to
04:15 11 the graphics card. And the LAN is waiting. The LAN
04:15 12 waits for something or receives something but still
04:15 13 waiting.

04:15 14 So -- and this is the whole idea of the shared
04:15 15 bus. This bus is shared by everyone, by all the
04:15 16 devices, but only one device can send at any point of
04:15 17 time. So now when the processor sends data to the
04:15 18 graphics card, the LAN has to wait.

04:15 19 When the processor is over, then it might be
04:15 20 the term of the LAN to engage in the transaction.

04:15 21 Q. Would this scheme slow down the overall
04:15 22 operation of a computer?

04:15 23 A. Of course.

04:15 24 Q. Okay. On your earlier slide, I think I read
04:15 25 single-ended signaling with 3.3 or 5 volts.

04:15 1 Will you please introduce the jury to what
04:15 2 this means?

04:15 3 A. Sure. And I think I have a slide to
04:15 4 illustrate the concept.

04:15 5 Basically, in single-sided -- in single-sided
04:15 6 signaling, we use one wire to transmit each signal. So
04:15 7 we use only one wire to transmit each signal, but we
04:16 8 may have multiple wires sharing a common reference
04:16 9 line, like something like the ground.

04:16 10 Some people are familiar with house wiring.
04:16 11 So there is a ground, the ground voltage. So we need
04:16 12 to have a common reference.

04:16 13 But each -- generally each signal will be
04:16 14 transmitted on a wire by itself. And you see here, in
04:16 15 order to transmit -- to transmit one, if I send like
04:16 16 one, which is the smallest -- like one bit is the
04:16 17 smallest piece of information for the computer. If
04:16 18 when I send one, then we have to bring the voltage
04:16 19 to -- sorry.

04:16 20 To send one, we have to bring the voltage to
04:16 21 its highest level. So we have to make the volt 5
04:16 22 volts. In order to send at zero, we have to make the
04:16 23 voltage close to zero, right, and so on. And this is
04:16 24 how we can -- we can send one, zero, one, zero, one and
04:16 25 so on.

04:16 1 Q. Are there downsides to using a signaling
04:16 2 scheme requiring 5 volts in order to generate a 1?

04:16 3 A. Yeah. 5 volts for data transmission is a lot.
04:17 4 To give you an idea, like your car battery operates
04:17 5 with 12 volts. And it's sufficient to power all the
04:17 6 devices within your car. All the electrical
04:17 7 requirements for the car -- by just this 12-volt
04:17 8 battery.

04:17 9 Using 5 volts for transmitting data in a
04:17 10 computer system is a lot.

04:17 11 Q. Thanks for this introduction to PCI local bus.
04:17 12 What does the '768 patent have to say about
04:17 13 the PCI local bus?

04:17 14 A. Yeah. I have a slide that shows some of the
04:17 15 main points.

04:17 16 Q. What are we looking at here, Dr. Sarhan?

04:17 17 A. Yeah. So here, we're looking to see -- we're
04:17 18 looking at a snapshot from the '768 patent. It's one
04:17 19 of the asserted patents in this case. And this is a
04:17 20 snapshot of that patent, but I added some highlighting
04:17 21 so that I can relay the information easily to the jury.

04:17 22 It says it clearly here that PCI buses are not
04:17 23 cable friendly. Right? It says that the interface
04:17 24 includes a very large number. You see a very large
04:18 25 number -- a very large number of signal channels and

04:18 1 also large number of pins.

04:18 2 And it says that it costs more. And it's
04:18 3 bulkier and more cumbersome to handle.

04:18 4 So this basically are the main limitation of
04:18 5 the PCI local bus as described, as disclosed by the
04:18 6 patents.

04:18 7 Q. Does the '768 patent propose a new bus to
04:18 8 solve the problems you just identified with the PCI
04:18 9 local bus?

04:18 10 A. Yes.

04:18 11 Q. What is that bus?

04:18 12 A. So here the patent -- again, this is a
04:18 13 snapshot from the same patent. It says: It is
04:18 14 desirable to use low voltage differential or LVDS
04:18 15 channel. And it says that it's: More cable friendly,
04:18 16 fast -- it's more cable friendly, it's faster, consumes
04:18 17 less power, generates less noise, including
04:18 18 electromagnetic interference.

04:18 19 Q. Again, if you would finish that sentence,
04:19 20 please.

04:19 21 A. Yeah. And --

04:19 22 Q. Just "than a PCI channel."

04:19 23 Did I read that right?

04:19 24 A. Yeah. Than a PCI channel. Yes.

04:19 25 Q. Okay. How do you interpret this passage,

04:19 1 Dr. Sarhan? What is the author here trying to convey?

04:19 2 A. It means that the -- that the inventor is
04:19 3 aware of the limitations of the PCI local bus and
04:19 4 proposed -- disclosed a solution that will address
04:19 5 these specific limitations.

04:19 6 Q. Does the '768 patent go on to disclose how to
04:19 7 replace the signaling scheme and PCI local bus with an
04:19 8 LVDS signaling scheme?

04:19 9 A. Yes.

04:19 10 Q. Okay. And we'll dive into that, but I want to
04:19 11 discuss some constituent pieces first, if we can.

04:19 12 Do the asserted patents disclose to the reader
04:19 13 how to understand this term, "low-voltage differential
04:19 14 signaling," or LVDS for short?

04:19 15 A. Yes. And I have a slide that -- a snapshot
04:19 16 from the patent.

04:19 17 Again, this is from the asserted patent, the
04:19 18 '768 patent. It says that: The term "LVDS" is herein
04:19 19 used to generically refer to low-voltage differential
04:20 20 signals and is not intended to be limited to any
04:20 21 particular type of LVDS technology.

04:20 22 Q. I see you've highlighted a couple of portions
04:20 23 here with your telestrator.

04:20 24 Why have you circled "generically"?

04:20 25 A. Yeah. So here, those are the keywords that

04:20 1 I'd like the jury to pay attention to.

04:20 2 So here, the definition of LVDS, according to
04:20 3 the patents themselves, it says that: This term should
04:20 4 be used generically to refer to low-voltage
04:20 5 differential signals and is not intended to be limited
04:20 6 to any specific type of LVDS technology.

04:20 7 I think this is, like, very important, like,
04:20 8 message I would like the jury to remember.

04:20 9 Q. Is this the meaning of LVDS you've applied in
04:20 10 the course of performing your infringement analysis?

04:20 11 A. Yes.

04:20 12 Q. I want to focus on the DS portion of LVDS.

04:21 13 What is a differential signal?

04:21 14 A. Like as we discussed before, when we talk
04:21 15 about single-sided signaling, "single-sided" means we
04:21 16 only use one wire for each signal, right? Only one
04:21 17 wire for each signal.

04:21 18 In double -- in differential signaling, we use
04:21 19 two wires for each signal. So for each signal, we'd be
04:21 20 using two wires instead of one. And basically, the
04:21 21 data that want to encode, whether it's zero or one, we
04:21 22 encode it as the difference in voltage between these
04:21 23 two wires.

04:21 24 And the keyword here is the difference in
04:21 25 voltage.

04:21 1 Q. I'd like to investigate that. But first, why
04:21 2 would someone teach using two wires and two signals to
04:21 3 do the job that used to be done by one wire and one
04:21 4 signal? Why this extra hardware? Why this extra
04:21 5 signal?

04:21 6 A. Yeah. By encoding the data as the difference
04:21 7 in voltage between two lines, we make the data more
04:22 8 reliable. So it can be transmitted in -- like, it will
04:22 9 be resilient to noise interference and about factors
04:22 10 that would impact the communicate -- the quality of the
04:22 11 communication.

04:22 12 Q. How does differential signaling accomplish
04:22 13 this greater resilience?

04:22 14 And if you can answer slowly, our court
04:22 15 reporter would certainly appreciate it.

04:22 16 A. Sorry. I'm driving you crazy today.

04:22 17 (Laughter.)

04:22 18 A. So basically, we have -- we have two wires
04:22 19 and -- very close to each other. And the -- basically,
04:22 20 the noise will hit the two wires in exactly the same
04:22 21 way. It will impact the two wires in the same way.

04:22 22 So if one of them, the voltage goes down, for
04:22 23 the other one also the voltage will go down. The
04:22 24 difference will remain the same. So although we're
04:22 25 going to have noise, it's -- but the noise on both

04:22 1 lines will cancel each other.

04:22 2 BY MR. HALES:

04:22 3 Q. Have we attempted to demonstrate that on this
04:22 4 slide here, Dr. Sarhan?

04:22 5 A. Yes. And here see, this is the single-sided
04:23 6 scheme that we mentioned before that's used by PCI --
04:23 7 the PCI local bus specification. You see here we have
04:23 8 only one wire to transmit the signal. But we said,
04:23 9 like, we're going to have a reference voltage for
04:23 10 multiple wires.

04:23 11 But here, basically, we have one wire for --
04:23 12 one wire, like, for each signal. In the case of the
04:23 13 differential signal, we use two wires. Right?

04:23 14 So if you go here now, for single-sided
04:23 15 signaling, if you look here at this figure, you see
04:23 16 here, if we have noise, then we have fluctuation in the
04:23 17 voltage here, right?

04:23 18 And if the fluctuation in voltage becomes
04:23 19 severe enough, this one may be thought to be like a
04:23 20 zero. So the receiver may think this one is a zero, so
04:23 21 the data will be corrupted.

04:23 22 In the case of -- in the case of double-sided
04:23 23 signaling, what's going to happen here, we're still
04:23 24 going to have some noise, but the noise will impact
04:23 25 both wires in the same way.

04:24 1 And, like, when one of them here goes down,
04:24 2 that other one will go down. When the other one goes
04:24 3 up, that other one goes up. So the difference remains
04:24 4 unchanged. And remember that difference, because the
04:24 5 data is encoded, is represented by the difference in
04:24 6 voltage and is going to remain unchanged regardless of
04:24 7 the noise.

04:24 8 Q. Is this resilience characteristic of
04:24 9 differential signaling significant in your view?

04:24 10 A. Extremely. Remember, like, we use this type
04:24 11 of signaling to communicate information from one place
04:24 12 to the other.

04:24 13 When we communicate information, one of the
04:24 14 most important metrics that we use is the fidelity
04:24 15 of -- or the integrity of the data that we want to
04:24 16 send. The most important thing, we want to send the
04:24 17 data and receive it exactly the same way.

04:24 18 Q. Let's move to the LV portion of LVDS, low
04:24 19 voltage.

04:24 20 What does the patent have to say about low
04:24 21 voltage, and how do you understand that term?

04:24 22 A. Yeah. So as the term -- like, as it's shown
04:24 23 here, like, you know, as it's -- the term itself means
04:25 24 that instead of having high voltage, we're going to
04:25 25 have low voltage.

04:25 1 Q. Okay. Do the asserted patents call for the
04:25 2 same parallel transmission scheme you diagramed earlier
04:25 3 where the bits are traveling side by side across
04:25 4 stacked wires?

04:25 5 A. No. The data will be sent serially.

04:25 6 Q. What is serial transmission?

04:25 7 A. Serial transmission means the data will be
04:25 8 sent one bit at time. Instead of sending the data on,
04:25 9 like, multiple pieces of data in parallel on multiple
04:25 10 wires, we send, like, the data serially, one bit at a
04:25 11 time on one wire.

04:25 12 Q. What are we looking at here on Slide 30,
04:25 13 Dr. Sarhan?

04:25 14 A. Okay. So here on the left, this is the left
04:25 15 side. This is basically the scheme used by the PCI
04:25 16 local bus that the patent discussed and describe its
04:25 17 disadvantages.

04:25 18 As you see here, we have multiple wires and
04:25 19 the data is sent in parallel on multiple wires at the
04:25 20 same time. But it's going to be sent all -- but only
04:25 21 one direction at a time, either the receive direction
04:26 22 or the transmit direction. So this is basically the --
04:26 23 how things go with the PCI local bus.

04:26 24 Now, this is the -- on the right, we see the
04:26 25 disclosed solution in the patents. As we see here, in

04:26 1 this case, we have two differential pairs, right? So
04:26 2 these, one, two, because we're using differential
04:26 3 signaling, which will cancel out the noise that we
04:26 4 discussed before.

04:26 5 So we have one pair in one direction, and then
04:26 6 we have another pair in the other direction. So the
04:26 7 data can be communicated in both directions at the same
04:26 8 time benefitting from the -- from the differential
04:26 9 signaling approach that we cancel the noise.

04:26 10 Q. And is this the technology that is described
04:26 11 and claimed in this patent?

04:26 12 A. Yes.

04:26 13 Q. Okay. Does the serial LVDS signaling
04:26 14 discussed in the patents offer advantages over the
04:26 15 parallel signaling called for in the PCI local bus
04:26 16 standard?

04:26 17 A. Yes. And I have a slide about that to
04:27 18 illustrate to the jury.

04:27 19 So on the left, we have the scheme used by the
04:27 20 PCI local bus, right? And so this scheme will have too
04:27 21 many wires. It will have high interference, high
04:27 22 noise. It will have high voltage. It will have low
04:27 23 data transfer rate. It will have high power
04:27 24 consumption.

04:27 25 These are the characteristics of the PCI local

04:27 1 bus implementation.

04:27 2 In the disclosed solution in the -- these
04:27 3 patents, basically we're going to have fewer wires.
04:27 4 It's going to have less noise. The communication will
04:27 5 be more reliable. The -- we're going to have lower
04:27 6 voltage. It's going to have higher data transfer rate,
04:27 7 and it's going to result in lower power consumption.

04:27 8 Power consumption relates to that -- to
04:27 9 explain it to the jury, if we have higher power
04:27 10 consumption, then your laptop battery will drain
04:27 11 sooner. So it has -- it's a very important metric.

04:28 12 Q. Okay. I'd like to zoom out a little bit.
04:28 13 Looking at these collection of -- this collection of
04:28 14 advantages as an expert in this field, do you find this
04:28 15 to be a significant collection of advantages over the
04:28 16 prior art?

04:28 17 A. Certainly.

04:28 18 Q. Why?

04:28 19 A. I have -- I prepared a slide to summarize the
04:28 20 benefits of the disclosed -- or the patented LVDS
04:28 21 approach.

04:28 22 It's going to result in smaller connectors.
04:28 23 It's going to have longer battery life. It's going to
04:28 24 ensure faster operation, so the data is going to be
04:28 25 sent faster. And it's going to result in fewer errors,

04:28 1 fewer transmission errors.

04:28 2 Q. Thank you, Dr. Sarhan.

04:28 3 I want to return to an issue I raised earlier:
04:28 4 Do the patents teach how to implement LVDS in place of
04:28 5 the parallel signaling scheme called for by PCI local
04:28 6 bus?

04:28 7 A. Yes. The patents have detailed disclosure
04:28 8 about that. And I believe I have a figure to
04:28 9 illustrate this.

04:28 10 Q. Sure.

04:28 11 Dr. Sarhan, will you describe to the jury what
04:29 12 we're looking at here on Figure 33? And take your
04:29 13 time. We'll take as much time as it takes to make
04:29 14 sense of what we're looking at here.

04:29 15 A. Yeah. Okay.

04:29 16 So the -- as you see here, the -- on the left
04:29 17 side, we have the attached computer module, which is
04:29 18 basically the module that we see next to Dr. Chu that
04:29 19 he showed us, like, you can insert into the console.

04:29 20 And here, we have the peripheral console where
04:29 21 we actually insert the -- that module.

04:29 22 And you see these two things are connected by
04:29 23 the XIS Bus. And this bus includes this bus I want you
04:29 24 to pay attention to, the XP Bus.

04:29 25 The -- now, if we look at the -- at the

04:29 1 attached computer module, we see here we have the CPU,
04:29 2 which is the main part of the computer. It has the
04:29 3 memory. It has the graphics subsystem. So it has the
04:29 4 main components of the computer system. It also has
04:29 5 the storage.

04:30 6 On the right side, we have the peripherals so
04:30 7 that we can actually -- for example, like a screen or
04:30 8 keyboard or whatever.

04:30 9 The -- as we see here, we have a PCI bus on
04:30 10 the left, and also we have a PCI bus on the right,
04:30 11 right?

04:30 12 Q. Right.

04:30 13 A. And these -- basically, two PCI buses will
04:30 14 communicate with each other through the -- this
04:30 15 interface controller and this interface controller.

04:30 16 Q. So thanks for that explanation. We've been
04:30 17 discussing LVDS serial signaling technology.

04:30 18 Where is that in what we're viewing here?

04:30 19 A. Yeah. Exactly. So this one's going to be
04:30 20 here. See the XP Bus. XP Peripheral Bus. So this bus
04:30 21 has the LV -- the disclosed LVDS channels.

04:30 22 What's going to happen here, let's say that we
04:30 23 have -- going to choose a different color here.

04:30 24 We have this -- still the same color.

04:30 25 So we have this PCI bus here. And let's say

04:31 1 this PCI bus needs to send data to the other PCI bus on
04:31 2 the other side. They want to communicate with each
04:31 3 other, want to establish communication between these
04:31 4 two buses.

04:31 5 Now, what's going to happen, remember, the
04:31 6 PCI --

04:31 7 (Clarification by Reporter.)

04:31 8 A. So the PCI bus is a parallel bus, right, as we
04:31 9 mentioned before. So it's going to send the data in
04:31 10 parallel format to the host interface controller.

04:31 11 The host interface controller will convert it
04:31 12 to serial format. It's going to send it serial one bit
04:31 13 at a time. And these data will be sent on these LVDS
04:31 14 channels which are part of the XP peripheral bus.

04:31 15 When this data goes to the other interface
04:31 16 controller, which is this interface controller now,
04:31 17 what's going to happen, it's going to do the opposite.
04:31 18 It's going to get the data in serial format, receive it
04:31 19 in serial format, convert it to parallel format so that
04:31 20 this -- the PCI bus will receive it in the manner it's
04:31 21 accustomed to.

04:31 22 BY MR. HALES:

04:31 23 Q. That sounds great, but does the patent teach
04:32 24 how that host interface controller does the process you
04:32 25 just described, take in parallel PCI data and serialize

04:32 1 it for transmission on the LVDS channels?

04:32 2 A. Yes. We have some -- the patents have
04:32 3 detailed disclosure about that. And I have a figure.
04:32 4 But I do not want to put the jury to sleep or bore
04:32 5 them. So please bear with me.

04:32 6 I'm going to try my best to explain. I only
04:32 7 have so many minutes. If I'm going to go over every
04:32 8 single unit, it's going to take forever. So I'm going
04:32 9 to just, like, give you an idea about the overall
04:32 10 points so that you understand the overall principles so
04:32 11 that you can judge accordingly.

04:32 12 Q. And if you could start by saying where this is
04:32 13 from, that would be great. Thank you.

04:32 14 A. Sure. So here, this one, again, is from the
04:32 15 '768 patent, one of the asserted patents in this case.
04:32 16 And we see here, we have -- again, here, see, we have
04:32 17 the host PCI bus on this slide.

04:32 18 Q. And before you get going, what is this overall
04:32 19 box that we're looking at with all of the sub
04:32 20 components?

04:32 21 A. Yeah. So this one is referred to as the -- is
04:33 22 the host interface controller.

04:33 23 Q. Okay. So is this the component that receives
04:33 24 the PCI information and serializes it before it goes
04:33 25 on --

04:33 1 A. That's right. So when I --

04:33 2 Q. If I can finish my question.

04:33 3 -- before it goes on the LVDS channels?

04:33 4 A. That's right. So like when we talk about the
04:33 5 PCI local bus and they examine it and they said is
04:33 6 going to be sent to the other one, when the first one
04:33 7 sends to the other one, like is going to go to first to
04:33 8 that host interface controller.

04:33 9 Q. Okay. Will you please describe to the jury
04:33 10 how the host interface controller -- how the sausage
04:33 11 gets made, so to speak?

04:33 12 A. Yeah. So here, the -- remember the PCI bus.
04:33 13 It works in parallel form. Right? Transmit data in
04:33 14 parallel form. So this data now will come and will be
04:33 15 stored in these buffers -- or not just all of them, but
04:33 16 will be stored in these buffers temporarily. And then
04:33 17 this data will be encoded in a certain format.

04:33 18 After that it's going to be sent to this unit,
04:33 19 which is the serial to parallel -- which is the
04:33 20 parallel to serial converter.

04:34 21 Now, the data that receives it from the PCI
04:34 22 bus will be in parallel. That parallel to serial
04:34 23 converter does exactly what the name means. Like it
04:34 24 just will -- will convert the data from parallel form
04:34 25 to serial form so that it can be sent on these LVDS

04:34 1 channels.

04:34 2 Q. Okay. Thanks for that crash course on how the
04:34 3 host interface controller works.

04:34 4 So I'm going to pop back a slide. Here we
04:34 5 have an ACM on the left, a peripheral console on the
04:34 6 right, PCI local bus hardware on both systems, and then
04:34 7 the LVDS sits in the middle.

04:34 8 Is this the only type of embodiment of
04:34 9 Dr. Chu's invention disclosed in his patents?

04:34 10 A. No. We have other documents and here I have
04:34 11 another figure. And in this -- this specific
04:34 12 embodiment, here this is Figure -- it's Figure 8B in
04:34 13 the '768 patent.

04:34 14 Now, if we look at this figure closely, here
04:34 15 we see the CPU. It's -- and it's integrated with other
04:35 16 units. Like within the CPU, we're going to have other
04:35 17 also units. And we -- here, we have a channel
04:35 18 extending directly from this integrated CPU. And this
04:35 19 is -- you see here, it's called the XP Bus, which has
04:35 20 the LVDS channels.

04:35 21 So in this -- this embodiment teaches having
04:35 22 LVDS -- LVDS channel extending directly from the CPU,
04:35 23 which might be integrated by -- with other units.

04:35 24 Q. Dr. Sarhan, looking at this image and having
04:35 25 read the patents, does this embodiment of Dr. Chu's

04:35 1 inventions have any PCI local bus hardware in it?

04:35 2 A. No. And as a matter of fact, like if you look
04:35 3 back, if you -- can you go back to the previous slide?

04:35 4 I think it's very important for the jury to see.

04:35 5 Q. This one?

04:35 6 A. So here, like you see, like it's marked
04:35 7 directly. In the patents themselves, we see this is
04:35 8 PCI bus. Here it says this is PCI bus.

04:35 9 And the slide after -- I mean the one just
04:35 10 before this one. Yeah.

04:36 11 And here this one is marked as a PCI bus.

04:36 12 Now, here, in Figure 8B, which is another
04:36 13 figure in the same patent, here, we don't have any PCI
04:36 14 bus. And we have these LVDS -- LVDS channels extending
04:36 15 directly from this bus.

04:36 16 Q. Is this an important figure for your patent
04:36 17 analysis in this case?

04:36 18 A. Yeah. And I think this is something very
04:36 19 important for the jury to pay attention to. Because
04:36 20 the accused products, the accused ASUS products do not
04:36 21 have any PCI local bus hardware. So they don't have a
04:36 22 PCI local bus hardware.

04:36 23 And -- however, they do exactly what's done
04:36 24 here. Like we have a CPU, and from the CPU, which
04:36 25 could be integrated with other units, we have an LVDS

04:36 1 channel extending from there.

04:36 2 Q. Thank you.

04:36 3 Dr. Sarhan, let's move on to patent claims, if
04:36 4 you don't mind.

04:36 5 Dr. Sarhan, how have you approached your
04:36 6 understanding of the claims, the patent claims in this
04:36 7 case?

04:36 8 A. Yeah. So initially, the -- there used to be
04:37 9 like -- when I first work on this case, there used to
04:37 10 be a huge number of claims.

04:37 11 And then the claims -- like a -- like the
04:37 12 asserted claims, like, became smaller and smaller to
04:37 13 the extent now we have a smaller number of claims so
04:37 14 that the jury can be able to, like, examine them and
04:37 15 make their decision.

04:37 16 So now we have a smaller amount of claims.
04:37 17 The -- although there's -- even like before, there used
04:37 18 to be a huge number of claims, but they shared some
04:37 19 limitations. They shared certain elements. Right?

04:37 20 And in my analysis, I tried to focus on the
04:37 21 claim limitations that appeared the most. Right?
04:37 22 Especially like in this presentation to the jury, I'm
04:37 23 going to focus on the claim limitation that -- on the
04:37 24 limitation that appear in most claims so that you can
04:37 25 get the overall picture in the best way possible.

04:37 1 Q. Have you identified some of the most important
04:37 2 often repeated claims -- I'm sorry -- claim limitations
04:37 3 found in the asserted claims?

04:37 4 A. Yes. And I have a slide about that.

04:38 5 Q. Let's take a look at those.

04:38 6 Will you please introduce the jury to, I
04:38 7 guess, what they're looking at here?

04:38 8 A. Yeah. So these are the claim limitations that
04:38 9 appear in most claims. Right? So these are the most
04:38 10 popular claim limitations.

04:38 11 A claim limitation is an element. It's part
04:38 12 of the requirement of the overall claim.

04:38 13 Q. Okay. So when we get to the claim language
04:38 14 and start performing the infringement analysis, we'll
04:38 15 see these six limitations again and again?

04:38 16 A. Exactly.

04:38 17 Q. Okay. Let's learn about them. Let's start
04:38 18 with the first one, if we can.

04:38 19 Dr. Sarhan, what should the jury know about an
04:38 20 LVDS channel conveying address and data bits of a PCI
04:38 21 transaction?

04:38 22 A. Yeah. So here, I think the most important
04:38 23 thing for the jury to realize first here is that we
04:38 24 have a PCI transaction. And the Court construed the
04:38 25 term, so it give a specific meaning to this term as we

04:38 1 see on this slide.

04:38 2 So the Court construed "PCI bus transaction"
04:38 3 as a transaction in accordance with the industry
04:39 4 standard PCI local bus specification for communication
04:39 5 with interconnected peripheral component, and "in
04:39 6 accordance with" includes backward compatibility.

04:39 7 And also, I want the jury to pay attention to
04:39 8 what I underlined here. So here, according to the
04:39 9 Court construction, "in accordance" includes backward
04:39 10 compatibility.

04:39 11 Q. Can you help explain kind of accessible terms?
04:39 12 What does it mean for something to be in accordance --
04:39 13 well, let me start from the end.

04:39 14 What does it mean for something to be
04:39 15 "backward compatible"?

04:39 16 A. Yeah. So the -- as we -- we'll see like in
04:39 17 the later slide, the -- like, as I mentioned -- or even
04:39 18 I mentioned earlier when I describe the patents, I said
04:39 19 like the patents, I defined problems in the PCI local
04:39 20 bus specification. And then the sure, like, ways to
04:39 21 address this limitation. And address these limitations
04:40 22 while maintaining backward compatibility with the PCI
04:40 23 local bus. So we want to make sure it's compatible
04:40 24 with the PCI local bus.

04:40 25 Q. How is that -- if I can ask, how is that

04:40 1 compatibility described in the patents? What does it
04:40 2 mean that we can use these new LVDS channels but remain
04:40 3 compatible with PCI local bus?

04:40 4 A. Yeah. So one of the things -- like, this is
04:40 5 an important question. In real life, software
04:40 6 development takes time. You have companies that design
04:40 7 and develop operating system. For example, Microsoft,
04:40 8 like they have their Windows operating system. There
04:40 9 are also, like, other companies like Apple, they have
04:40 10 their own operating system, iOS, et cetera.

04:40 11 It takes time to make massive changes to the
04:40 12 operating system, to support, let's say, like new
04:40 13 interconnect. Right? So this takes a little while.

04:40 14 And also, they have to basically debug it,
04:40 15 which works with different -- for different devices.
04:40 16 This takes a lot of time.

04:40 17 So the patents describe a solution that will
04:40 18 work with existing operating systems without any
04:41 19 modifications, with existing drivers without
04:41 20 modifications.

04:41 21 So the solution that we discuss here in the --
04:41 22 that are disclosed in the patent are supposed to work
04:41 23 with no changes whatsoever to the operating system, or
04:41 24 to the applications, or to the drivers, or to the BIOS,
04:41 25 et cetera.

04:41 1 Q. Thank you for that explanation.

04:41 2 Have you applied the Court's definition for
04:41 3 this claim limitation in performing your infringement
04:41 4 analysis?

04:41 5 A. Definitely.

04:41 6 Q. Have you researched whether the accused
04:41 7 products satisfy this limitation: LVDS channels to
04:41 8 convey address and data bits of a PCI transaction?

04:41 9 A. Yes. Remember when we talk about the PCI
04:41 10 local bus and we said it has all these limitations? It
04:41 11 was the technology prevailing in the late 1990s. And
04:41 12 that the patents said that it has all of these sort of
04:41 13 problems that we discussed previously.

04:41 14 This -- the PCI local bus was then replaced by
04:42 15 a new technology called PCI Express. PCI Express is an
04:42 16 evolution over the PCI local bus implementation. The
04:42 17 accused products, they have this technology. They have
04:42 18 the PCI Express technology. And this is the technology
04:42 19 and the question, like, that we're going to be
04:42 20 analyzing in a little bit.

04:42 21 So this -- the PCI Express technology
04:42 22 basically use -- employs LVDS channels that convey
04:42 23 address and data bits of a PCI transaction, as we'll
04:42 24 see later on in a little bit more detail.

04:42 25 Q. Thank you for that. I want to put a finer

04:42 1 point on it if I can.

04:42 2 Have you concluded whether PCI Express
04:42 3 satisfies the limitation we're looking at here on our
04:42 4 screen?

04:42 5 A. Yes.

04:42 6 Q. And what have you concluded?

04:42 7 A. Yeah. I concluded that it does satisfy
04:42 8 these -- this claim limitation.

04:42 9 Q. Will you open your binder to J-20, please?

04:43 10 A. Yes.

04:43 11 Q. What is J-20?

04:43 12 A. So this is the PCI Express Base Specification.

04:43 13 Q. Have you reviewed this document in performing
04:43 14 your infringement analysis?

04:43 15 A. Yes.

04:43 16 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we'd like to
04:43 17 offer this into evidence.

04:43 18 MR. BURESH: No objection.

04:43 19 THE COURT: Admitted.

04:43 20 BY MR. HALES:

04:43 21 Q. What does this document have to say, if
04:43 22 anything, about the term that we see on our screen
04:43 23 here, ability to convey address and data by PCI bus
04:43 24 transaction?

04:43 25 A. Yeah. So I have a slide that shows this

04:43 1 information.

04:43 2 So basically the -- if we -- again, this is
04:43 3 the document that we just discussed, the PCI Express,
04:43 4 which is the evolution of the PCI local bus.

04:43 5 In the introduction, so this is in the --
04:43 6 like, the mid section of the -- of this -- of the PCI
04:43 7 Express standard, it says clearly that: The key PCI
04:43 8 attributes -- again, here, this is PCI -- the key PCI
04:43 9 attributes, such as its usage model, load store
04:44 10 architecture, and software interfaces, are maintained,
04:44 11 whereas its parallel bus implementation is replaced by
04:44 12 a highly scalable, fully serial interface.

04:44 13 Q. I'd like to parse this and see if we can make
04:44 14 it a little more accessible for the jury.

04:44 15 What does it mean that key PCI attributes,
04:44 16 including a usage model, load store architecture, and
04:44 17 software interface, are maintained in PCI Express?

04:44 18 A. Yeah. So basically here the -- like, to make
04:44 19 it, like, as simple as possible, PCI Express uses a
04:44 20 PCI-compatible software model.

04:44 21 So by design, PCI Express is made so that it
04:44 22 retains compatibility with the software model of PCI.

04:44 23 Q. Is that your conclusion, or is the PCI Express
04:44 24 standard --

04:44 25 A. This is --

04:44 1 Q. -- explicit in this regard?

04:44 2 A. Yeah. It's very explicit, and we see some
04:44 3 statements that are on -- directly from the
04:44 4 specification about that.

04:44 5 Q. Okay. Let's look at the second half of this
04:45 6 sentence.

04:45 7 Its parallel bus implementation is replaced by
04:45 8 a highly scalable, fully serial interface.

04:45 9 What is important about this statement for the
04:45 10 jury's analysis today?

04:45 11 A. Yeah. So what's important here is that --
04:45 12 like I'm sure the jury will, like, kind of remember,
04:45 13 like, we talked about so much about the parallel bus.
04:45 14 Like, we said this is bad, right?

04:45 15 So -- and the PCI Express -- PCI Express
04:45 16 replaces that parallel bus with a serial interconnect,
04:45 17 a fully serial interconnect.

04:45 18 And remember when we talk about the patents,
04:45 19 we said that the patents, they want to replace the,
04:45 20 like, basically the PCI -- that -- the parallel PCI bus
04:45 21 with a serial interconnect utilizing LVDS channels.

04:45 22 Q. Well, we have serial. Do we have LVDS
04:45 23 anywhere in the PCI Express standard?

04:45 24 A. Say it again.

04:45 25 Q. LVDS, do we have any disclosure of whether PCI

04:45 1 Express uses low-voltage differential signaling?

04:45 2 A. Yes. Definitely. We have that from the
04:45 3 standard itself.

04:46 4 MR. HALES: Let's take a look at Slide
04:46 5 40.

6 BY MR. HALES:

04:46 7 Q. Will you please tell the jury what we're
04:46 8 looking at here?

04:46 9 A. Again, so this is the PCI Express
04:46 10 specification. So this specifies the PCI Express
04:46 11 standard.

04:46 12 And here, it says that the fundamental PCI
04:46 13 Express link consists of two low-voltage,
04:46 14 differentially driven signal pairs, a transmit pair and
04:46 15 a receive pair, as shown in this figure.

04:46 16 So here it shows this figure as well.

04:46 17 And in this figure, you see here we have two
04:46 18 components that communicate with each other. And you
04:46 19 see here we have -- this one is one pair that's used in
04:46 20 one direction. And here we have another differential
04:46 21 pair in another direction.

04:46 22 And as we see here, it describes that these
04:46 23 are low-voltage, differentially driven, which means
04:46 24 that they are low -- they use differential signaling.
04:46 25 And they have low -- and also low voltage at the same

04:46 1 time. And each -- and in each direction. One in the
04:47 2 transmit direction, and one in the receive direction.

04:47 3 And this is basically like what we talk about
04:47 4 when we discuss the patents.

04:47 5 Q. Who published this document? Who wrote this?

04:47 6 A. This is, like -- as I mentioned earlier, like,
04:47 7 a standard is written, like, by a body of companies.
04:47 8 They have different companies, like Intel and so many
04:47 9 other companies, computer-related companies. They sit
04:47 10 together, they form certain committees, and they
04:47 11 develop standards accordingly.

04:47 12 Q. And so the fruit of that effort is what we're
04:47 13 looking at here. They've described this as
04:47 14 low-voltage, differentially driven signaling; is that
04:47 15 right?

04:47 16 A. That's right.

04:47 17 Q. Okay. And you interpret this figure to show
04:47 18 that it will use unidirectional pairs of those
04:47 19 low-voltage, differentially driven signal pairs?

04:47 20 A. That's right.

04:47 21 Q. Okay. So I appreciate that you've reviewed
04:47 22 the PCI Express standard and made conclusions about
04:47 23 what's in PCI Express.

04:47 24 Have you reviewed any other materials --
04:48 25 independent materials of what this body says about this

04:48 1 technology?

04:48 2 A. I reviewed so many different material,
04:48 3 including a presentation by Intel. Intel like --

04:48 4 Q. Let me stop you right there.

04:48 5 A. Sorry.

04:48 6 Q. I need to seal the courtroom to talk about
04:48 7 Intel documents.

04:48 8 MR. HALES: With apologies to our
04:48 9 gallery.

04:48 10 THE COURT: If there's anyone in the
04:48 11 courtroom who's not under the protective order, please
04:48 12 step outside.

04:48 13 (Sealed proceedings.)

04:48 14 BY MR. HALES:

04:48 15 Q. Dr. Sarhan, I believe you were referencing an
04:48 16 Intel document?

04:48 17 A. Yes. So basically, it's a presentation by
04:49 18 Intel. Intel -- just like to tell the jury, I'm sure
04:49 19 like most of you might know, Intel is one of the main
04:49 20 processor companies in the whole world. And they make
04:49 21 processors and those processors are used, like, by so
04:49 22 many companies, including ASUS. And actually played a
04:49 23 center role in the development of PCI Express.

04:49 24 Q. Dr. Sarhan, will you open to P-744 in your
04:49 25 binders and tell me if this is the Intel document which

04:49 1 you just referenced?

04:49 2 A. Yes. It's the one.

04:49 3 Q. What does this document -- what is this

04:49 4 document, and what does it describe?

04:49 5 A. So this document is -- provides information,
04:49 6 details about the PCI Express specification.

04:49 7 Q. But specifically, like, its title page, what
04:49 8 indication does it give to you of how it was used and
04:49 9 put together?

04:49 10 A. Yeah. So here we say that PCI --

04:50 11 (Clarification by Reporter.)

04:50 12 A. So many, like, very heavy documents. It's
04:50 13 better than going to the gym.

04:50 14 So basically, it says: PC Architecture to
04:50 15 IDC. And here it talks about, like, different aspects
04:50 16 of the PC, which is the computer architecture.

04:50 17 It talks about so many different interconnects
04:50 18 and interfaces.

04:50 19 BY MR. HALES:

04:50 20 Q. Have you relied on this document in forming
04:50 21 your opinions?

04:50 22 A. Definitely.

04:50 23 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we offer it into
04:50 24 evidence.

04:50 25 MR. BURESH: No objection.

04:50 1 THE COURT: Admitted.

04:50 2 BY MR. HALES:

04:50 3 Q. Dr. Sarhan, I'm showing you here on Page 41 an
04:50 4 excerpt from that document.

04:50 5 Will you please tell the jury what we're
04:50 6 looking at?

04:50 7 A. Yeah. So here we see the title of the slide
04:50 8 is PCI-Express Overview, which is the standard that
04:50 9 we're talking about. And here, it -- clearly, it says

04:50 10

04:51 11

04:51 12 And also, I want to bring to the attention of
04:51 13 the jury, this figure which describes this in some
04:51 14 detail.

04:51 15 And again, here we see we have differential
04:51 16 signal occurs. See here,

04:51 17

04:51 18

04:51 19

04:51 20

04:51 21 Q. Thank you.

04:51 22 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we can unseal the
04:51 23 courtroom at this point.

04:51 24 THE COURT: Okay.

09:42 25 (Sealed proceedings end.)

04:51 1 MR. HALES: I'll proceed if I don't need
04:51 2 to wait for anyone to come back in.

04:51 3 BY MR. HALES:

04:51 4 Q. Dr. Sarhan, have you studied how much voltage
04:51 5 PCI signaling calls for?

04:51 6 A. Yeah. Yes.

04:51 7 Q. Have you collected the voltage amounts in your
04:51 8 expert report?

04:51 9 A. Yeah. In my expert report, I have -- I made
04:51 10 one table that shows the voltage levels.

04:52 11 Q. Is this that table, Dr. Sarhan?

04:52 12 A. Yes. This is part of the table that I have in
04:52 13 my expert's report. And here, like, may seem to be too
04:52 14 complicated, but, like, I'm going to describe it in the
04:52 15 easiest way possible.

04:52 16 You see here, like in this column, we have the
04:52 17 different technology. And here, we have different PCI
04:52 18 Express speeds and generations. On the left, these are
04:52 19 different -- see, 2.5 GT per second. These are
04:52 20 different speeds. As we go down, we have higher speeds
04:52 21 generally.

04:52 22 And here, we have -- in this column, we have
04:52 23 the minimum voltage. And here, we have the maximum
04:52 24 voltage. And you see it calls it $V_{TX-DIFF-P-P}$, which is
04:52 25 basically the peak-to-peak differential voltage output,

04:52 1 right?

04:52 2 And here, we can see that, like, generally,
04:52 3 for PCI Express, we're going to have a value -- a
04:52 4 minimum value from .8 to a maximum value of 1.2 volt.
04:52 5 So from .8 volt to 1.2 volt.

04:52 6 Q. Okay. So if we were to average those, we'd
04:52 7 come out with 1 volt?

04:52 8 A. Yeah. Probably. I didn't do the average
04:53 9 myself.

04:53 10 Q. Well, would you remind the jury how many volts
04:53 11 are called for in the PCI local bus standard?

04:53 12 A. In the PCI local bus standard, which is the
04:53 13 old one that we discussed, uses either 5 volt or 3.3
04:53 14 volt.

04:53 15 Q. And here, we're using roughly somewhere
04:53 16 between .8 volts and 1.2 volts, if I've understood your
04:53 17 testimony?

04:53 18 A. That's right.

04:53 19 Q. Is the voltage that you see here on the screen
04:53 20 what you would consider low voltage within the meaning
04:53 21 of the asserted patents?

04:53 22 A. Definitely.

04:53 23 Q. Dr. Sarhan, I'd like to discuss address and
04:53 24 data bits.

04:53 25 What are address and data bits?

04:53 1 A. Okay. So I have a slide about that to
04:53 2 illustrate the concept.

04:53 3 But before getting to the address and data
04:53 4 bits, let's say where do they actually come from.

04:53 5 So here on the left, we have a set of commands
04:53 6 that PCI -- like, that PCI transactions have. So we
04:54 7 have different types of commands. We have memory read,
04:54 8 memory write. We have I/O read, I/O write.

04:54 9 So these are the main commands that we have in
04:54 10 the -- in PCI. The -- those commands or requests
04:54 11 include address and data bits of a PCI transaction. So
04:54 12 we have address and data bits.

04:54 13 What do you mean by address bits and data
04:54 14 bits?

04:54 15 So the address bits are the -- they describe
04:54 16 where the data will be written or where exactly we're
04:54 17 going to get it from. So it specify that address.

04:54 18 The data is the data that we're going to
04:54 19 communicate from one place to another place.

04:54 20 And knowledge here I would give to the jury is
04:54 21 this: Like if a jury member would like to send a
04:54 22 letter to someone, he or she would put the address.
04:54 23 The address will specify where this letter will go.
04:54 24 Right? And this is similar to the address in the case
04:54 25 of PCI.

04:54 1 And when you write the letter -- when you send
04:55 2 the letter, when you write the actual letter, what you
04:55 3 write is the content, is the actual data. And so
04:55 4 basically, the data, you send this data, which is the
04:55 5 actual content of the letter. We sent it to a certain
04:55 6 destination. Right?

04:55 7 Q. How have you concluded that PCI Express uses
04:55 8 address and data bits?

04:55 9 A. Yeah. So the -- of course I looked at the --
04:55 10 the standard itself gives us guidance about that. It
04:55 11 shows clearly that PCI Express has address and data
04:55 12 bits.

04:55 13 Q. Is that what we're looking at on Slide 44?

04:55 14 A. That's right. Again, this is from the PCI
04:55 15 Express specification. And this is the most
04:55 16 authoritative document on PCI Express. This is why
04:55 17 it's the specification.

04:55 18 And here, it shows -- like, it may seem to be
04:55 19 complicated, but here it shows basically the packet,
04:55 20 the collection of data that we have, the unit of data
04:55 21 that we want to send.

04:55 22 And see, this is the -- like, this is
04:55 23 basically the generic packet, and part of the packet
04:56 24 here, one header will be for the data. So the data
04:56 25 that will be sent from one device to another, from one

04:56 1 unit to another is included right here.

04:56 2 Q. Have you concluded whether PCI Express uses
04:56 3 address bits as well?

04:56 4 A. Yes. And also the specification itself
04:56 5 teaches that PCI Express has address bits as well, and
04:56 6 also some other documents have that information as
04:56 7 well.

04:56 8 Q. Will you please look at P-488 in your binder,
04:56 9 Dr. Sarhan?

04:56 10 A. Yes.

04:56 11 Q. What is P-488?

04:56 12 A. It's a -- it's Introduction to PCI Express - A
04:56 13 Hardware and Software Developer's Guide. So this is a
04:56 14 book, a developer guide, and it's issued by Intel
04:56 15 Press.

04:56 16 Q. Okay. And is this a document you've relied on
04:56 17 to conclude that PCI Express uses address bits?

04:56 18 A. Yes.

04:56 19 MR. HALES: We offer it into evidence,
04:56 20 Your Honor.

04:56 21 MR. BURESH: No objection.

04:56 22 THE COURT: Admitted.

04:56 23 BY MR. HALES:

04:57 24 Q. Dr. Sarhan, will you tell the jury what we're
04:57 25 looking at on Slide 45?

04:57 1 A. Yeah. So here it shows the different type of
04:57 2 requests. So here, we have memory requests, and here
04:57 3 we have the memory. Like here -- sorry. This is
04:57 4 64-bit address memory request, and this is 32-bit
04:57 5 address memory request. And this is I/O. The bottom
04:57 6 we have the I/O request.

04:57 7 So these are different type of requests. And
04:57 8 here, it shows the header. "Header" means like the
04:57 9 beginning. Generally, it's the beginning of the
04:57 10 packet. It describes some stuff that's -- are related
04:57 11 to the packet.

04:57 12 And inside that header, which is part of the
04:57 13 whole overall packet, we see here these fields. It
04:57 14 shows here clearly the address bits.

04:57 15 Q. Thank you.

04:57 16 Dr. Sarhan, do you consider the address and
04:57 17 data bits used in PCI Express to be address and data
04:57 18 bits in accordance with the PCI local bus
04:57 19 specification?

04:57 20 A. Yes.

04:57 21 Q. Why?

04:57 22 A. As I mentioned earlier, PCI Express uses
04:58 23 the -- uses a PCI compatible software model, right?
04:58 24 And I have the -- I believe I might have a slide here.
04:58 25 Yeah.

04:58 1 So this is, again, from PCI Express, right?
04:58 2 And it says here clearly that it has a PCI compatible
04:58 3 software model.

04:58 4 This is one of the many features of PCI -- PCI
04:58 5 Express. And this is why it was able to become as
04:58 6 successful as it became.

04:58 7 And here, it shows that it has the ability to
04:58 8 enumerate and configure PCI Express hardware using PCI
04:58 9 system configuration software implementation. So this
04:58 10 is part of the software that you have in the computer.

04:58 11 What does it mean?

04:58 12 This software is designed for PCI. It's
04:58 13 designed -- this software is just -- the only thing it
04:58 14 knows in the world is PCI.

04:58 15 It does not know anything about PCI Express
04:58 16 because it might be newer. Right? So this --
04:59 17 basically the PCI Express has the ability to work with
04:59 18 old software that was meant only for PCI.

04:59 19 And also, it says it has the ability to boot
04:59 20 existing operating systems with no modification.
04:59 21 Don't -- does not need any modification to the
04:59 22 operating system. So the -- you have -- even if you
04:59 23 have a legacy operating system and you have PCI
04:59 24 hardware, PCI devices, it's going to work without any
04:59 25 problem, although the operating system itself --

04:59 1 although the operating system itself does not know
04:59 2 anything about PCI Express. It was made before even
04:59 3 PCI Express.

04:59 4 So it has nothing to know about PCI Express,
04:59 5 but still it can work with PCI Express devices with no
04:59 6 problem.

04:59 7 And also says that it can support existing I/O
04:59 8 device drivers. And these drivers also ended up --
04:59 9 software -- software that we have in the computer, and
04:59 10 it can work with those with no modifications as well.

04:59 11 And finally, it has the ability to configure
05:00 12 and enable PCI Express functionality. So still, PCI
05:00 13 Express has some additional functionality. That
05:00 14 functionality is enabled by adopting the PCI
05:00 15 configuration paradigm.

05:00 16 Q. Thank you for that.

05:00 17 Dr. Sarhan, have you prepared any
05:00 18 demonstration about how the PCI Express system achieves
05:00 19 this compatibility with PCI local bus?

05:00 20 A. Yes. I have a figure to show that. And
05:00 21 that --

05:00 22 Q. My question of course, as always when we look
05:00 23 at a slide, is what are we looking at? And please help
05:00 24 the jury understand why you find this significant.

05:00 25 A. Sure. So this is, again, from the PCI Express

05:00 1 specification. This is the most authoritative document
05:00 2 that describes PCI Express.

05:00 3 And here, this is a snapshot. But I added
05:00 4 some highlighting. The highlighting is mine, just to
05:00 5 make sure like the jury can follow easily.

05:00 6 And see here, this is the CPU. This is the
05:00 7 main -- the brain of the computer, which execute
05:00 8 instruction and software. And remember on the previous
05:01 9 slide, we said that PCI Express uses a PCI compatible
05:01 10 software model. Right?

05:01 11 Now, when the CPU execute instructions from
05:01 12 that PCI compatible software, right, is going to
05:01 13 encounter some instructions. And while it executes
05:01 14 these instructions, it will convey address and data
05:01 15 bits of a PCI intersection.

05:01 16 To give you like a specific example, let's say
05:01 17 that this CPU wanted to execute -- in here we have
05:01 18 certain software that executes -- a program that
05:01 19 execute. And in the program here, we have a write
05:01 20 instruction, memory write instruction. So this
05:01 21 instruction will be writing to the memory. So -- and
05:01 22 the memory can read -- right?

05:01 23 And -- sorry. So here, like -- so it's going
05:01 24 to be writing to memory, but the PCI Express devices --
05:01 25 so this is the CPU. It executes code, and part of the

05:01 1 code we have a memory write instruction.

05:01 2 This memory write instruction, if you have a
05:02 3 certain -- like depending on the address of that
05:02 4 instruction, it might be for a certain PCI device or
05:02 5 within the territory of a certain PCI device or within
05:02 6 a certain PCI Express device.

05:02 7 Here, I'm showing like those devices
05:02 8 differently. I'm showing the PCI Express endpoints.
05:02 9 See this? I'm showing them in this color.

05:02 10 And I'm showing here the -- old PCI local
05:02 11 hardware in here. So this is the old PCI hardware. So
05:02 12 in this system, we're going to -- we have old and new
05:02 13 hardware. The new -- the new PCI Express hardware and
05:02 14 the old PCI local bus hardware.

05:02 15 The -- when the CPU, like, executes
05:02 16 instructions from that PCI compatible software, it may
05:02 17 encounter, let's say, a memory write instruction. This
05:02 18 memory write instruction, what does it do? It's going
05:02 19 to write to a memory location.

05:02 20 That memory location could be either in this
05:02 21 memory, or it could be in the -- in -- within a certain
05:03 22 PCI device or within a certain PCI Express device.
05:03 23 Right?

05:03 24 So now -- and it will have -- because you're
05:03 25 writing to a memory, you have to specify -- when you

05:03 1 write something, you have to specify where to write it.

05:03 2 Q. And what do you use to specify where to write
05:03 3 something?

05:03 4 A. Yeah. This -- the address. So you need to
05:03 5 know the address of the location where you're going to
05:03 6 write the data.

05:03 7 And also, because you want to write something,
05:03 8 you need to write data. Right? So the memory write
05:01 9 instruction includes data that want to communicate,
05:03 10 will write to the memory, and it's going to have the
05:03 11 address.

05:03 12 And because -- remember, like we said, this is
05:03 13 PCI compatible software. The CPU now is executed --
05:03 14 (Clarification by Reporter.)

05:03 15 A. So the CPU -- I feel bad for my students.

05:03 16 So the -- basically the -- when the CPU
05:03 17 execute PCI compatible software, right, if the -- those
05:03 18 are meant like -- I mean, it's PCI compatible. So
05:03 19 that would -- when you have a memory write instruction,
05:03 20 they are going to -- those address and data bits will
05:04 21 actually be for a PCI transaction, because this whole
05:04 22 term is PCI compatible software.

05:04 23 And another reason I would give about this is
05:04 24 that the -- remember we talk about the courtroom
05:04 25 section, this Court, like all the certain definition

05:04 1 of -- definitions of certain terms?

05:04 2 The Court said define PCI Express -- a PCI
05:04 3 transaction to be a transaction in accordance -- in
05:04 4 accordance with the PCI local bus specification. And
05:04 5 then it says -- it clarifies and says "in accordance
05:04 6 includes compatibility." Right?

05:04 7 This is the key word, compatibility.

05:04 8 PCI Express is backward compatible with the
05:04 9 PCI local bus specification. And this is one of the
05:04 10 main features of PCI Express, and this is what
05:04 11 contributed to the great success of PCI Express.

05:04 12 BY MR. HALES:

05:04 13 Q. Thank you, Dr. Sarhan.

05:04 14 Have you prepared a demonstration of how a CPU
05:05 15 is able to speak both to a PCI local bus device and a
05:05 16 PCI Express device?

05:05 17 A. Yes. I have one quick animation about this.

05:05 18 I wanted to make it in the easiest way
05:05 19 possible so that the jury can understand, but there's
05:05 20 more details to it. Just like an oversimplified
05:05 21 animation that explains just the overall concept.

05:05 22 Q. I'll hit "play." You go ahead and explain
05:05 23 what we're looking at.

05:05 24 A. Sure. So here the CPU is going to be sending
05:05 25 data to a PCI Express device. This is a new device.

05:05 1 Right? And --

05:05 2 Q. And I think you saw a switch of orientation in
05:05 3 there from --

05:05 4 A. Exactly.

05:05 5 Q. -- one angle to another.

05:05 6 Can you tell the jury what that was?

05:05 7 A. Yeah. So basically, the CPU -- like, we --
05:05 8 the CPU will have address and data bits. The address
05:05 9 and data bits of the CPU are parallel. So the CPU will
05:05 10 send the data to the root complex in parallel form.
05:06 11 This is how the CPU operates. It has a parallel bus.

05:06 12 So it will send the data in parallel to the --
05:06 13 like, in parallel form, and then the root complex will
05:06 14 serialize the -- this data, will send it serially over
05:06 15 to the PCI Express device, which is the new device that
05:06 16 we're referring to here.

05:06 17 Q. Can you explain to the jury how it works if
05:06 18 the CPU wants to speak to any PCI local bus device?

05:06 19 A. Yeah. So here we have another -- another part
05:06 20 of the demo now. The same thing, it will be
05:06 21 converted -- data converted -- it's going to be -- it's
05:06 22 going to be converted to the serial to PCI Express, and
05:06 23 now it's going to go to the PCI local bus. And now
05:06 24 those devices will receive this data in parallel format
05:06 25 because of this little thing here.

05:06 1 This is the bridge, a bridge that bridges
05:06 2 between PCI Express and PCI -- the old PCI.

05:06 3 Q. Thank you, Dr. Sarhan.

05:06 4 The CPU, when it issues this memory write
05:06 5 instruction, does it know whether it's speaking to a
05:06 6 downstream PCI local bus device or if it's speaking to
05:07 7 a PCI Express device?

05:07 8 A. A -- like, it's going to be, like, we have a
05:07 9 certain command, like let's say a memory write command,
05:07 10 within a certain software that we set up the addresses
05:07 11 in such a way so that work fine.

05:07 12 The data -- like, it will send -- like, the
05:07 13 root complex will know what addresses belong to it.
05:07 14 And then it will actually work on them and forward them
05:07 15 to the place that can -- will claim those addresses.

05:07 16 Q. So thanks for that. I guess my question's a
05:07 17 little different.

05:07 18 When the CPU says, I want to send this
05:07 19 downstream, does it -- does it operate in one way for
05:07 20 PCI local bus devices and a different way for PCI
05:07 21 Express devices?

05:07 22 A. No. It uses a PCI compatible software, and
05:07 23 the data will be sent using memory commands, like,
05:07 24 memory -- and by memory read or memory write commands
05:07 25 or I/O read, I/O write. But memory read and memory

05:07 1 write are the more common commands.

05:07 2 Q. And when these endpoints, whether it's PCI
05:08 3 local bus or PCI Express, present themselves to the
05:08 4 CPU, do they say, hey. I'm PCI Express. Or do they
05:08 5 say, hey. I'm PCI local bus. How does that work?

05:08 6 A. Yeah. Actually, the -- like, the devices are
05:08 7 enumerated. Like, when you, for example, like, turn on
05:08 8 your computer, like you have your -- any machine that
05:08 9 you have, Windows, Linux, whatever machine, when you
05:08 10 turn it on, at the very beginning it will do a process
05:08 11 called enumeration.

05:08 12 In the enumeration process, it will recognize
05:08 13 the different devices that are connected. Could be,
05:08 14 like, if we have, like, an old computer with PCI local
05:08 15 bus hardware or we have a new one with PCI Express, or
05:08 16 sometimes they may exist with each other.

05:08 17 Now each device will be identified accordingly
05:08 18 by the -- using the PCI configuration paradigm. And
05:08 19 this is a PCI configuration mechanism.

05:08 20 Like, for example, like, you know, when
05:08 21 working on this case, I -- like, I used some software,
05:08 22 like, to look at the devices and I have like a figure
05:09 23 on my report. What I -- in my -- in my -- in my
05:09 24 computer, in that software that I use, when I did that
05:09 25 enumeration to see the list of devices, all the devices

05:09 1 are shown to be PCI devices.

05:09 2 Not that they are PCI devices -- these are PCI
05:09 3 Express devices, but they are using the PCI enumeration
05:09 4 paradigm. And the devices will be thought of as if
05:09 5 they are PCI devices, right?

05:09 6 But in this enumeration process, of course
05:09 7 they can be configured using the new capabilities and
05:09 8 additional function maybe that they might have.

05:09 9 Q. Thank you, Dr. Sarhan.

05:09 10 I'd like to move on from this point to the
05:09 11 other five elements you'd like to teach the jury about.

05:09 12 But I -- before we go, based on your study of
05:09 13 the asserted patents, have you concluded whether PCI
05:09 14 Express transactions are backward compatible with the
05:09 15 requirements of the PCI local bus specification?

05:09 16 A. Yes.

05:09 17 Q. Okay. Have you determined whether, in your
05:09 18 view, the address and data bits of a PCI Express
05:09 19 transaction are properly considered to be in accordance
05:10 20 with the PCI local bus specification?

05:10 21 A. Yes.

05:10 22 Q. All right. Let's return then to that second
05:10 23 element of the six that you'd like to introduce the
05:10 24 jury to.

05:10 25 What is important for the jury to know about:

05:10 1 LVDS channel conveying USB protocol data, packets, or
05:10 2 information?

05:10 3 A. Yeah. So, again, this is -- we've talked
05:10 4 about the most popular claims in the patents. This is
05:10 5 the second claim that we have in that list, which is
05:10 6 basically: LVDS channel conveying USB protocol
05:10 7 data/packets/information.

05:10 8 And the Court also, basically, like, construed
05:10 9 the term to have its plain and ordinary meaning. So
05:10 10 USB here, when you deal with USB, I'm instructed to
05:10 11 apply a plain and ordinary meaning of this term.

05:10 12 Q. Is that the meaning you've applied in your
05:10 13 analysis?

05:10 14 A. Yes.

05:10 15 Q. What have you analyzed to see if this
05:10 16 limitation is met in the accused products?

05:10 17 A. So basically the -- like, I identified certain
05:11 18 USB ports, USB 3.X, could be USB 3.0, 3.1, 3.2, or USB
05:11 19 4 or Thunderbolt. These ports basically, like, meet
05:11 20 this limitation, LVDS channels conveying USB protocol
05:11 21 data.

05:11 22 Q. Will you open to J-47, please?

05:11 23 And once you're there, will you please share
05:11 24 with the jury what you're looking at?

05:11 25 A. Okay. Yeah. It's the -- you said J-47,

05:11 1 right?

05:11 2 Q. Yes.

05:11 3 A. Yeah. It's the Universal Serial Bus 3.0

05:11 4 Specification.

05:11 5 Q. The same one that you analyzed in forming your
05:11 6 infringement opinions?

05:11 7 A. Yes.

05:11 8 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we offer it into
05:11 9 evidence.

05:11 10 MR. BURESH: No objection.

05:11 11 THE COURT: Admitted.

05:11 12 BY MR. HALES:

05:11 13 Q. What does this document say relative to the
05:11 14 term that we see here on your screen?

05:11 15 A. Yeah. So here -- and I have a slide about
05:11 16 that, a snapshot from the -- I have a snapshot from,
05:12 17 again, the USB 3.0 Specification.

05:12 18 And I'm sure like most of the jury worked with
05:12 19 USB devices before and you have that USB cable. If
05:12 20 that USB cable is 3.0 above, it's going to have
05:12 21 something like this.

05:12 22 So this is -- I'm showing you what's inside --
05:12 23 the wires inside that USB cable that you use a lot in
05:12 24 your life.

05:12 25 So if we look at the wires inside that cable,

05:12 1 we're going to see here this set of wires. And this
05:12 2 set of wires here, we have two -- see here, we have --
05:12 3 SS stands for super speed because this is the whole
05:12 4 idea of USB 3 to provide super speed -- super speed on
05:12 5 top of like USB 2, higher than USB 2.

05:12 6 And you see we have super speed TX, TX for the
05:12 7 transmitter. And then we have another pair, SST --
05:13 8 another set of pairs for the receiver.

05:13 9 So here, it just -- I mixed things up.

05:13 10 So here, the -- we have one pair, right, for
05:13 11 the -- this is the pair that I'm showing here in
05:13 12 yellow. This pair is for the -- for the -- for the
05:13 13 receiver on one -- for the transmitter on this side.

05:13 14 And we have another pair of wires for the --
05:13 15 for the receiver. And here, each one of these pair is
05:13 16 a differential signal pair as we describe before.

05:13 17 Q. Do you know whether this is a low-voltage
05:13 18 differential signal?

05:13 19 A. Yes. And I have, like, a slide about that.

05:13 20 Q. But before we get to that slide, the question
05:13 21 I have is: We're looking at a diagram of a cable.

05:13 22 Would these same channels be found on the
05:13 23 other side of a USB 3 port inside of the computer as
05:13 24 well?

05:13 25 A. That's right. So any cable will have two

05:13 1 sides. So we have -- like, let's say this side -- does
05:13 2 not matter which side, but we can -- this side
05:14 3 eventually we're going to connect it to the USB port on
05:14 4 the computer, right?

05:14 5 And the other side, this one will be connected
05:14 6 to the device, USB device, like, could be like a
05:14 7 camera, storage, whatever.

05:14 8 On this side now, when we -- for this side,
05:14 9 when we connect this cable -- cable to that USB port,
05:14 10 all these wires will have matching wires within that
05:14 11 port, right?

05:14 12 Q. Perfect. Thank you.

05:14 13 Now, the question I didn't let you answer was
05:14 14 whether these are low-voltage differential signal
05:14 15 channels.

16 A. Yes.

05:14 17 Q. I believe you indicated that you have a slide
05:14 18 on that?

05:14 19 A. Yes.

05:14 20 Q. Can you tell the jury what we're looking at on
05:14 21 our screen?

05:14 22 A. And again, like, here it shows the -- this --
05:14 23 this value. It shows the differential, $V_{TX-DIFF-PP}$, which
05:14 24 is the peak-to-peak value of the differential voltage,
05:14 25 and shows that here we have two values, the minimum is

05:14 1 .8 and the maximum 1.2, right.

05:14 2 And just remind us, with PCI Express, right?

05:15 3 PCI Express, the previous technology that we discussed,

05:15 4 also has .8 to 1.2 normally.

05:15 5 Q. I think in that context you determined that

05:15 6 was low voltage. Do I remember correctly?

05:15 7 A. That was low. Yeah.

05:15 8 Q. Is this similarly low voltage?

05:15 9 A. Yes. I'm not the only one that would

05:15 10 determine it to be low, because the specification

05:15 11 itself refers to it as low voltage.

05:15 12 Q. Very good.

05:15 13 Let's move on to that third claim limitation
05:15 14 you want to introduce the jury to.

05:15 15 What is a central processing unit?

05:15 16 A. Yeah. So the central processing unit, like
05:15 17 this one, basically the brain of the computer. It's
05:15 18 the part of the computer that executes instructions.

05:15 19 You have programs. Those programs will
05:15 20 execute it by the CPU. They could be add instruction,
05:15 21 multiply, divide, whatever.

05:15 22 So -- and this CPU is generally inserted in
05:15 23 the motherboard in this slot, for example. This is
05:15 24 just an example. So here we put this CPU, and we
05:15 25 insert it in this slot on the motherboard, right?

05:15 1 Q. Great.

05:15 2 What is an interface controller, and what are
05:15 3 we looking at?

05:15 4 A. Okay. So remember the LVDS channels that we
05:16 5 talk about that were disclosed, like, by the patents to
05:16 6 convey USB -- to convey PCI Express data or USB data?

05:16 7 So here, we have these -- these are the LVDS
05:16 8 channels that we have. And there we go. And the
05:16 9 interface controllers, see, we have one interface
05:16 10 controller here and we have one interface controller on
05:16 11 this side.

05:16 12 The interface controller basically manages
05:16 13 these LVDS channels. Everything needs to be somehow
05:16 14 managed configured toward the way it's supposed to
05:16 15 work. So the interface control basically manages these
05:16 16 channels.

05:16 17 And to give an example to the jury, if -- if
05:16 18 you can think about the CPU as the chef in the
05:16 19 restaurant, then the interface controller will be the
05:16 20 wait staff that will manage the orders and take food to
05:16 21 the customers when the food is ready.

05:16 22 Q. Very good.

05:16 23 The next limitation you highlighted was
05:16 24 graphics controller.

05:16 25 Can you introduce the jury to what that is?

05:17 1 A. Yeah. So I'm sure like if the -- some of the
05:17 2 jury have kids, like their kids love gaming and all
05:17 3 that and they care about the graphics cards. So the
05:17 4 graphics cards can be like in this form. And in this
05:17 5 case, it would be inserted in one of these PCI Express
05:17 6 slots.

05:17 7 And it sometimes can come like this in the
05:17 8 form of a GPU with some surrounding elements, and that
05:17 9 one, in the case of laptop, it will be like that. It
05:17 10 will be like this in the laptop. This one, like it
05:17 11 will be like in the PC.

05:17 12 And in some cases, the GPU itself or the
05:17 13 graphics system or the graphics controller can be
05:17 14 integrated part of the CPU. So the CPU can act as both
05:17 15 CPU and GPU at the same time.

05:17 16 Q. Great.

05:17 17 And the final of the six was a peripheral
05:17 18 bridge?

05:17 19 Can you introduce the jury to this hardware?

05:17 20 A. Yes. According to the patents, the peripheral
05:17 21 bridge is a unit that can allow more and more devices
05:18 22 to be connected to the computer system or to the
05:18 23 motherboard. And the peripheral bridge is basically
05:18 24 the chipset that we have in the computers. It's most
05:18 25 commonly referred to as a chipset, which is this unit.

05:18 1 Remember the CPU which is the main part of the
05:18 2 computer, the brain of the computer. Sometimes we
05:18 3 refer to this chipset as the companion chipset because
05:18 4 it's meant to be a companion to the CPU.

05:18 5 And by this we can add additional ports, we
05:18 6 can have, like, additional USB ports. We have
05:18 7 additional PCI Express slots and so on.

05:18 8 Q. Thank you for that crash course.

05:18 9 Dr. Sarhan, is this, what you've just
05:18 10 described to the jury, the understanding of the patent
05:18 11 claim limitations you've applied in performing your
05:18 12 infringement analysis?

05:18 13 A. Yes.

05:18 14 Q. And how specifically did you present that
05:18 15 infringement analysis in this case to date?

05:18 16 A. So I wrote an expert witness report which is
05:19 17 part of these exhibits. So like this -- it's 500-page
05:19 18 report -- more than 500-page report on infringement.

05:19 19 And basically, I analyzed the patents and the
05:19 20 claims and figured out whether the products, according
05:19 21 to the specifications and how they work, et cetera,
05:19 22 whether they meet the claim limitations in the -- in
05:19 23 the patents.

05:19 24 Q. You mentioned 500-some-odd products had been
05:19 25 accused of infringement.

05:19 1 How did you organize that for purposes of your
05:19 2 infringement analysis?

05:19 3 A. Okay. So what I did is that I grouped these
05:19 4 products into -- or I classified these products into
05:19 5 groups. Right? And then, like, I examined one
05:19 6 representative product in each group.

05:19 7 Q. How many groups did you have?

05:19 8 A. So I ended up with like -- yeah. We have 29
05:19 9 representative groups.

05:19 10 Q. Did you conclude that each of these 29 groups
05:19 11 infringed the asserted claims?

05:19 12 A. No. Not the whole 29.

05:20 13 Q. Describe how many you left behind.

05:20 14 A. Okay. What I did -- yeah. When I did my
05:20 15 analysis on the accused products and I classified them
05:20 16 into 29 representative groups, 4 of the groups I didn't
05:20 17 find adequate evidence for infringement, so I decided
05:20 18 to remove them from my report. And then like the rest,
05:20 19 25, basically, I determined that they infringed ACQIS'
05:20 20 products.

05:20 21 Q. And those 25 groups, are those the 500-odd
05:20 22 products that you discussed earlier in your testimony?

05:20 23 A. Yes.

05:20 24 Q. Okay. And did you conclude that each of these
05:20 25 products that remain in the case infringe the apparatus

05:20 1 claims we discussed earlier, the claims protecting a
05:20 2 computer?

05:20 3 A. Yes.

05:20 4 Q. Did you conclude that each of the products
05:20 5 that remain in the case were manufactured according to
05:20 6 the method claims asserted in this case?

05:20 7 A. Yes.

05:20 8 Q. Does Slide 57 accurately summarize the
05:20 9 infringement opinions you arrived at in this case?

05:20 10 A. Yes.

05:21 11 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we're going to do
05:21 12 the infringement walk at this point. It's probably
05:21 13 going to take about 45 to 50 minutes. I know it's
05:21 14 going to put us about 6:05 or 6:10. I just will
05:21 15 proceed however you think is wisest.

05:21 16 THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, I try
05:21 17 and defer to you all. I'm happy to stay. We could
05:21 18 stay till 5:45 and then break. We could break now. We
05:21 19 can stay till 6:00. You let me know what you'd like to
05:21 20 do.

05:21 21 You're okay? Want to go to 5:45? Will
05:21 22 that work?

05:21 23 MR. HALES: I'll bet we could do one of
05:21 24 the representative products by then.

05:21 25 THE COURT: Let's do that. But thank you

05:21 1 for asking.

05:21 2 MR. HALES: Yes. I certainly appreciate
05:21 3 it.

05:21 4 BY MR. HALES:

05:21 5 Q. Dr. Sarhan, let's share with the jury how you
05:21 6 arrived at your infringement conclusions. Let's start
05:21 7 with the representative desktop, if we can.

05:22 8 A. Yes.

05:22 9 Q. What materials did you review to make your
05:22 10 infringement determinations with respect to this -- the
05:22 11 S340MF product?

05:22 12 A. Yeah. I reviewed the ASUS product
05:22 13 specification. I reviewed the ASUS user manual. And
05:22 14 also, I reviewed other technical documents produced by
05:22 15 ASUS and third parties, in this case, Intel, for the
05:22 16 processor.

05:22 17 Q. Will you take a look at P-17, please?

05:22 18 A. Say it again?

05:22 19 Q. P-17.

05:22 20 A. J-17, right?

21 Q. P-17.

05:22 22 A. Oh, P. I'm getting tired.

05:23 23 Q. Should be in Volume I, if I'm not mistaken.

05:23 24 A. Yeah. In Volume I, I have J-17.

05:23 25 Q. Let's open J-17 and tell me what you see.

05:23 1 A. Yeah. Okay. So this is the -- okay. So this
05:23 2 is the -- basically the products, the ASUS product
05:23 3 specification for this desktop.

05:23 4 Q. Okay. Is this the same specification sheet
05:23 5 you relied on in arriving at your infringement
05:23 6 opinions?

05:23 7 A. Yes.

05:23 8 Q. Great. My mistake. It is J-17.

05:24 9 And will you please open to P-344?

05:24 10 A. Yes.

05:24 11 Q. What is P-344?

05:24 12 A. It's the -- it's the data sheet for the 8th
05:24 13 and 9th Generation Intel core processor. This is
05:24 14 basically the data sheet from Intel for the -- this
05:24 15 desktop. This desktop uses an Intel processor. And
05:24 16 this data sheet gives us the details about this
05:24 17 processor, how it's designed, the background, and all
05:24 18 of that information.

05:24 19 Q. And have you relied on this document in
05:24 20 forming your opinions?

05:24 21 A. Yes.

05:24 22 MR. HALES: Your Honor, we offer them
05:24 23 into evidence.

05:24 24 MR. BURESH: Which ones?

05:24 25 MR. HALES: J-17 and P-344.

05:24 1 MR. BURESH: No objection.

05:24 2 THE COURT: Admitted.

05:24 3 BY MR. HALES:

05:24 4 Q. All right, Dr. Sarhan. Let's turn our
05:24 5 attention to the first claim and perform an
05:24 6 infringement analysis.

05:24 7 Have you concluded whether the S340MF has a
05:24 8 printed circuit board?

05:24 9 A. Yes.

05:24 10 Q. Does it --

05:24 11 A. So yeah. Just I'm organizing all these
05:25 12 folders.

05:25 13 Q. You know, I'm jumping into it. Let's just
05:25 14 pause for one second.

05:25 15 Is this Claim 10 of the '768 patent?

05:25 16 A. Yes.

05:25 17 Q. And are we looking at the claim limitations of
05:25 18 this Claim 10?

05:25 19 A. Yes.

05:25 20 Q. Okay. Let's walk through them just one row at
05:25 21 a time and decide if you've concluded whether they are
05:25 22 found in this accused product, all right?

05:25 23 Does this product have a printed circuit
05:25 24 board?

05:25 25 A. Yes. As any computer, like it will have a

05:25 1 motherboard which contains -- which holds all the
05:25 2 different components of the computer and connects them
05:25 3 together.

05:25 4 Q. Okay. What about a central processing unit?

05:25 5 A. Yes. As any computer, like it will have a
05:25 6 central processing unit.

05:25 7 And here, even if we look at the ASUS product
05:25 8 specification -- this is the ASUS product
05:25 9 specification -- it shows the information about the
05:25 10 processor. It can have either this or that about the
05:25 11 processor.

05:25 12 Q. Okay. Let's go to the third row.

05:25 13 Does this product have a peripheral bridge
05:25 14 directly coupled to that CPU without an intervening PCI
05:25 15 bus?

05:25 16 A. Yes. So we have this chipset. This is again
05:26 17 from the ASUS product specification. And this
05:26 18 specifies this chipset. That's connected directly to
05:26 19 the central processing unit.

05:26 20 Q. So that was a long limitation.

05:26 21 What is the chipset from the language we see
05:26 22 at the left?

05:26 23 A. The -- yeah. The chipset is basically the
05:26 24 peripheral bridge.

05:26 25 Q. Okay. And what are we looking at here on

05:26 1 Slide 62?

05:26 2 A. Yeah. So here we see the -- this is now from
05:26 3 the Intel CPU data sheet. So this is the details for
05:26 4 the CPU that -- that used in this product. And you see
05:26 5 here we have in this diagram -- in this diagram we have
05:26 6 this part, which is the CPU itself. And this part is
05:26 7 the peripheral bridge or the chipset or PCI chip.

05:26 8 Q. Okay. And in between them I see you've put a
05:26 9 square around DMI.

05:26 10 What is DMI?

05:26 11 A. So DMI is an interconnect between the -- it's
05:26 12 proprietary to Intel. Intel develop this interconnect
05:27 13 to connect between the processor and the chipset.

05:27 14 Q. Is DMI a peripheral component interconnect
05:27 15 bus?

05:27 16 A. No.

05:27 17 Q. Okay. Well, what is it based on?

05:27 18 A. DMI is based on PCI Express.

05:27 19 Q. Is PCI Express itself a PCI -- I'm sorry -- a
05:27 20 peripheral component interconnect bus?

05:27 21 A. No.

05:27 22 Q. Okay. I've run out of language to investigate
05:27 23 here.

05:27 24 Are the limitations of claim -- or Row 3 met
05:27 25 in this product?

05:27 1 A. Yes.

05:27 2 Q. Okay. This is a lengthy limitation here in
05:27 3 Row 4. Let's take it in constituent pieces.

05:27 4 Have you concluded whether this accused
05:27 5 desktop product has a low voltage differential signal
05:27 6 channel directly extending from the peripheral bridge
05:27 7 that you've identified?

05:27 8 A. Yes. So here it says: LVDS comprising two
05:27 9 unidirectional serial channels of multiple opposite
05:27 10 directions, right? And this is -- must be used, like,
05:27 11 to convey address and data bits of a PCI transaction.

05:27 12 And here, we see this -- like, this is the
05:28 13 peripheral bridge again.

05:28 14 And directly extending from this peripheral
05:28 15 bridge, we have this DMI. And we have this PCI here --
05:28 16 PCI Express channels. And these are -- as we discussed
05:28 17 earlier, like, they employ LVDS in opposite directions
05:28 18 and they are used to convey address and data bits of a
05:28 19 PCI transaction.

05:28 20 Q. Okay. So we heard the earlier analysis about
05:28 21 PCI Express, but DMI, what reason do you have to
05:28 22 believe that it also would be a LVDS channel?

05:28 23 A. Yeah. I looked at a lot of documents from
05:28 24 Intel, a lot of -- and these documents, they described
05:28 25 how -- like, details about DMI, how it works.

05:28 1 And even, like, in one of the documents I
05:28 2 looked at, it showed the differences between DMI and
05:28 3 PCI Express. None of these differences would matter in
05:28 4 terms of this analysis that I just performed.

05:28 5 Q. Great. Let's proceed further in this lengthy
05:28 6 limitation.

05:29 7 Does this product have the LVDS channels we
05:29 8 just discussed, which have two unidirectional serial
05:29 9 channels of multiple differential line pairs to convey
05:29 10 data in opposite directions?

05:29 11 A. Yes. And here, now we're going back to that
05:29 12 ASUS product specification that tells us the features
05:29 13 of this product.

05:29 14 And clearly here it shows that we have
05:29 15 different PCI Express channels, including this channel,
05:29 16 which has 16 lanes, right? And here, like -- yeah.
05:29 17 And here, this one like -- and this one has one lane,
05:29 18 and that one, here, is not specified.

05:29 19 Q. Okay. Are you confident that these channels
05:29 20 will have signal pairs to convey data in opposite
05:29 21 directions?

05:29 22 A. Yes. This is the nature of LVDS as we
05:29 23 discussed before. So when talk about PCI Express, I
05:29 24 don't want to, like, maybe, like, show it again in the
05:29 25 slides, but we show that we have, like, differential

05:29 1 pairs in opposite directions.

05:29 2 Q. Great.

05:29 3 A. So we already established that.

05:29 4 Q. The language here at the end: Wherein, the
05:30 5 LVDS channels convey address and data bits of a PCI bus
05:30 6 transaction.

05:30 7 Is this limitation satisfied?

05:30 8 A. Yes. Because the whole idea of PCI Express is
05:30 9 to convey address and data bits of PCI transaction.

05:30 10 Q. Very good.

05:30 11 And this last limitation, it appears new. Can
05:30 12 you introduce the jury to a network controller?

05:30 13 A. The -- yes. So here, like, if we look again
05:30 14 at the product specifications, we can see that here we
05:30 15 have different network controllers, right?

05:30 16 And so here, we have WiFi. And here, we have
05:30 17 RJ45 Gigabit Ethernet connector, which is, like, to
05:30 18 connect it to a local network through a certain wire.

05:30 19 Q. Is this final limitation met in the accused
05:30 20 desktop product?

05:30 21 A. Yes.

05:30 22 Q. Does the accused desktop product satisfy all
05:30 23 limitations of Claim 10 of the '768 patent?

05:30 24 A. Yes.

05:30 25 Q. Very good.

05:30 1 Let's move on to Claim 13 of the '768 patent.

05:30 2 Is the accused desktop a computer, Dr. Sarhan?

05:30 3 A. Yes. Of course.

05:30 4 Q. Does it have an integrated central processing
05:31 5 unit with an interface controller on the same chip?

05:31 6 A. Yes. And we said all of them have it, and we
05:31 7 have that in the processor diagram, which shows that.

05:31 8 Q. On what basis do you conclude that it has an
05:31 9 interface controller?

05:31 10 A. Yeah. So here -- yeah. So the -- this is the
05:31 11 integrated CPU. This is the CPU. And if we look at
05:31 12 this CPU, we see here we have some channels coming out
05:31 13 of it, including the PCI Express channel and we have
05:31 14 DMI channels.

05:31 15 So these are LVDS channels, as I described
05:31 16 earlier, and these LVDS channels basically -- the --
05:31 17 yeah. Sorry -- needs to be managed, needs to be
05:31 18 configured. So we must have interface controllers to
05:31 19 manage these LVDS channels.

05:31 20 Q. Okay. Is this limitation met, Dr. Sarhan?

05:31 21 A. Yes.

05:31 22 Q. Let's go to Row 3. Again, it's another big
05:31 23 limitation. I'd like you to focus your analysis here
05:31 24 on anything that's new relative to the prior LVDS term
05:31 25 we've analyzed.

05:31 1 A. Yes. So here like -- yeah. Go ahead.

05:32 2 Q. In the first half here, is there any important
05:32 3 language the jury should focus on for purposes of your
05:32 4 analysis?

05:32 5 A. So same as before, we have these, like, the
05:32 6 PCI Express channels here, DMI. These are LVDS
05:32 7 channels to -- that convey address and data bits of a
05:32 8 PCI bus transaction.

05:32 9 Q. Okay. In the second half of the language, is
05:32 10 there any important new concept that the jury should
05:32 11 focus on?

05:32 12 A. Everything is same as before except here now
05:32 13 we have "multiple," right? So this is the keyword
05:32 14 here.

05:32 15 Q. Does --

05:32 16 A. This is the additional requirement.

05:32 17 Q. Does the accused desktop product use multiple
05:32 18 lanes of the LVDS channels you've identified?

05:32 19 A. Yes. So here, like, we can see this one here,
05:32 20 like, for the PCI Express, right? So it shows x 16.

05:32 21 Q. What does "x 16" mean?

05:32 22 A. 16 bits.

05:32 23 Q. Okay.

05:32 24 A. So it has 16 bits.

05:32 25 And also, the DMI here, although it does not

05:32 1 here show, like, how many lanes it has, DMI, like, by
05:32 2 reading Intel documents, I determined that it has
05:32 3 between four to eight lanes.

05:32 4 Q. Okay. This final limitation, what is system
05:32 5 memory, and is it directly coupled to the CPU of this
05:33 6 accused product?

05:33 7 A. Yes. So here we see the -- in the processor
05:33 8 diagram, we have this main memory or system memory as
05:33 9 we can see even in here. And it's connect -- and this
05:33 10 is the CPU. And here, we have direct connections
05:33 11 between the CPU and memory.

05:33 12 Q. And does this product actually use the diagram
05:33 13 system memory found in the internal document?

05:33 14 A. Yes. Actually, if you look at the product
05:33 15 specification, if you go back to the ASUS product
05:33 16 specification, it tells us, yeah. This...

05:33 17 Q. I guess this specific product, does it employ
05:33 18 the scheme that we see recommended by Intel on the
05:33 19 product --

05:33 20 A. Yeah. In the next slide, we -- yeah. So
05:33 21 here, it shows the specific memory that's actually
05:33 22 used.

05:33 23 Q. Okay. Are all limitations of Claim 13 found
05:33 24 in the accused desktop product?

05:33 25 A. Yes.

05:33 1 Q. Let's go to Claim 19 of the '359 patent.

05:33 2 Does this patent require any special handling,
05:33 3 or does our discussion of the '768 patent suffice?

05:33 4 A. Yeah. I'd like to discuss -- whatever we
05:33 5 discuss about '768 would be sufficient.

05:34 6 Q. Okay. I think we've established this is a
05:34 7 computer, Dr. Sarhan?

05:34 8 A. Yes.

05:34 9 Q. Does it have a CPU connected to a first LVDS
05:34 10 channel with the limitations that are recited there?

05:34 11 A. Yeah. So here, we have the CPU again. And
05:34 12 you see here, we have these PCI Express and DMI
05:34 13 channels, which are LVDS channels that, like, convey
05:34 14 data in opposite directions.

05:34 15 Q. Does your prior discussion of system memory
05:34 16 apply for this limitation too, Dr. Sarhan?

05:34 17 A. Yes. And if you look at this product, it
05:34 18 tells us that it has this specific memory.

05:34 19 Q. Okay. Does this product have a connector that
05:34 20 can couple to a console?

05:34 21 A. Yeah. It has actually a lot of connectors.
05:34 22 You see here, like, it has these different USB
05:34 23 connectors. It has Ethernet connector, HDMI, and so
05:34 24 on.

05:34 25 Q. Now, the Court has construed the term

05:34 1 "console."

05:34 2 Have you applied the Court's construction of
05:34 3 console in interpreting infringement of this
05:34 4 limitation?

05:34 5 A. Yes.

05:34 6 Q. Okay. Do you have any reason to doubt that
05:34 7 the connectors we view from the spec sheet here are
05:34 8 capable of connecting to a console as that term has
05:35 9 been defined?

05:35 10 A. Yes.

05:35 11 Q. I'm sorry. You do have reason to doubt or --

05:35 12 A. Sorry. Yeah.

05:35 13 Q. I'll re-ask the question.

14 A. Yeah.

05:35 15 Q. Do you -- having applied the Court's
05:35 16 construction for console, do you have any reason to
05:35 17 doubt the connectors we see here are capable of
05:35 18 coupling to a console?

05:35 19 A. No.

05:35 20 Q. Okay. What about this second LVDS channel,
05:35 21 what do you look to in the accused product for
05:35 22 satisfaction of this limitation?

05:35 23 A. Yeah. So here it says that: A second LVDS
05:35 24 channel, again, comprising two sets of unidirectional
05:35 25 differential signal pairs in opposite directions.

05:35 1 And here, like we'll see in the next
05:35 2 limitation, that calls for USB --

05:35 3 (Clarification by Reporter.)

05:35 4 A. The next limitation also -- it says that's
05:35 5 going to send USB data.

05:35 6 If we go, like, to the previous slide, you can
05:35 7 see -- like, you know, as we discussed before in the
05:35 8 Universal Serial Bus Specification 3.0, like we showed
05:35 9 this cable previously and we showed that it has -- it
05:35 10 uses two LVDS channels in opposite directions.

05:36 11 Q. Okay. Is that limitation met, Dr. Sarhan?

05:36 12 A. Yes.

05:36 13 Q. And the final limitation is -- are those USB
05:36 14 channels and ports capable of -- are they adapted to
05:36 15 transmit data packets in accordance with the USB
05:36 16 protocol?

05:36 17 A. Yes. The whole purpose of the USB protocol is
05:36 18 to send and transmit USB data.

05:36 19 Q. Okay. Are all limitations of Claim 19 in this
05:36 20 patent found in the accused desktop product?

05:36 21 A. Yes.

05:36 22 Q. Okay. I'd like to move on to the method
05:36 23 claims.

05:36 24 Will you provide the jury a refresher? What
05:36 25 are we looking for in a method claim?

05:36 1 A. Method claims, they specify the steps taken to
05:36 2 manufacture a certain product, a physical product. So
05:36 3 here, we're referring to manufacturing steps.

05:36 4 Q. How did you perform your infringement analysis
05:36 5 for the method claims?

05:36 6 A. Still I use the -- like, the same documents I
05:36 7 mention before. I looked at the -- I reviewed the ASUS
05:36 8 product specification, user manual. I looked at
05:36 9 third-party documents, including those by Intel.

05:37 10 Q. Any witness testimony, Dr. Sarhan?

05:37 11 A. Yes. I reviewed some deposition testimony by
05:37 12 ASUS employees that spoke about, you know, like, how
05:37 13 the ASUS products are designed and manufactured.

05:37 14 Q. Did you visit the manufacturing facilities?

05:37 15 A. No.

05:37 16 Q. Okay. Why not?

05:37 17 A. So I don't think it's necessary to visit the
05:37 18 manufacturing facility.

05:37 19 Q. Okay. Let's go to Claim 36 of the '797
05:37 20 patent.

05:37 21 Is there anything that you want to slow down
05:37 22 and describe that is particular, unique to the '797
05:37 23 patent, or was our discussion of the '768 sufficient?

05:37 24 A. Yeah. It should be sufficient.

05:37 25 Q. Very well.

05:37 1 Have you concluded that the limitation here in
05:37 2 Row 1 is satisfied in the manufacture of this accused
05:37 3 product?

05:37 4 A. Yes. So here, because it speaks about the
05:37 5 method of improving data throughput on a motherboard,
05:37 6 right? And later on, in the later limitation, we'll
05:37 7 see, like, how it's going to actually improve the
05:37 8 throughput.

05:37 9 Q. Okay. In any event, have you concluded this
05:37 10 product has a motherboard?

05:38 11 A. Yes.

05:38 12 Q. Okay. Have you concluded whether a CPU has
05:38 13 been mounted in it with an interface controller as a
05:38 14 single chip?

05:38 15 A. Yes. As we see, the product will have a CPU,
05:38 16 and the CPU will have interface controller as mentioned
05:38 17 earlier because of these LVDS channels, and the CPU
05:38 18 will be mounted on the motherboard because this is
05:38 19 where the CPUs will be mounted.

05:38 20 Q. Has the manufacturer connected the low voltage
05:38 21 differential signal with the properties recited there
05:38 22 in Row 3?

05:38 23 A. Yes. As we see, we have these PCI Express and
05:38 24 DMI channels, which, again, employ LVDS technology.

05:38 25 Q. Has the manufacturer increased data throughput

05:38 1 of these channels by providing them with multiple
05:38 2 differential signal pairs?

05:38 3 A. Yes. So as I mention before, PCI Express
05:38 4 here, x 16, which means it has 16 lanes. And DMI, as I
05:38 5 mentioned, has between four to eight lanes.

05:38 6 Q. Okay. Has the manufacturer configured the
05:38 7 interface controller to --

05:38 8 MR. HALES: I'm going to discuss an Intel
05:38 9 document, Your Honor, and I have to seal the courtroom
05:39 10 for about 30 seconds.

05:39 11 THE COURT: Okay. If you're not under
05:39 12 the protective order, please exit the courtroom.

05:39 13 (Sealed proceedings.)

05:39 14 BY MR. HALES:

05:39 15 Q. Dr. Sarhan, has the manufacturer increased the
05:39 16 throughput of the serial channels by providing them
05:39 17 with -- oh. We've discussed that.

05:39 18 Have the -- has the interface controller of
05:39 19 this product been configured to adapt to different
05:39 20 numbers of differential signal line pairs for conveying
05:39 21 encoded address and data bits?

05:39 22 I'd like for you in your answer, please, to
05:39 23 focus specifically on the concept of adapting to
05:39 24 different numbers of differential line pairs and
05:39 25 encoding.

05:39 1 A. Okay. So the -- which limitation are we at at
05:39 2 this point?

05:39 3 Q. The fifth limitation here -- the fifth row,
05:39 4 rather.

05:39 5 A. Okay. So the -- I'm not sure if we talked
05:39 6 about the previous one. Just like -- maybe like to be
05:39 7 sure.

05:39 8 So it says that increasing the data throughput
05:40 9 with multiple differential signal channels. When we
05:40 10 have, like, multiple lanes, as we saw here, like x 16
05:40 11 means 16 lanes. The whole idea of having more lanes is
05:40 12 to increase the data throughput.

05:40 13 Q. Okay. And how many lanes is DMI employed
05:40 14 with?

05:40 15 A. Again, [REDACTED]

05:40 16 Q. Okay. Is this Row 4 of the limitations there
05:40 17 satisfied?

05:40 18 A. Yes.

05:40 19 Q. Okay. This fifth row, I'd like for you to pay
05:40 20 special attention in your analysis, if you can, to
05:40 21 whether the interface controller is able -- capable of
05:40 22 adapting to different numbers of line pairs and whether
05:40 23 it's capable of encoding address and data bits --

05:40 24 A. Yes.

05:40 25 Q. -- in the manner recited there.

05:40 1 A. So again, like the interface controller
05:40 2 charged with managing the LVDS channels, the --
05:40 3 according to the PCI Express specification, the --
05:40 4 the -- like the PCI Express will adapt whatever number
05:40 5 of LVDS channels, whatever number of lanes that are
05:41 6 actually supported by the peripheral device. Right?

05:41 7 So whatever, like, number of lanes that are
05:41 8 supported by the peripheral device, the PCI Express
05:41 9 system will adapt accordingly and will -- there'll be
05:41 10 some negotiation and they will reach the minimum number
05:41 11 that's actually supported by two -- the two parties,
05:41 12 like the two units that communicate with each other.

05:41 13 And also, like in the PCI Express
05:41 14 specification, it teaches that some lanes -- if some
05:41 15 lanes may experience temporary or permanent failures,
05:41 16 then the PCI Express standard calls for changing the
05:41 17 number of lanes, like, dynamically to account for any
05:41 18 temporary or permanent errors that may occur.

05:41 19 Q. And the analysis you just provided is relevant
05:41 20 to what claim limitation here in Row 5?

05:41 21 A. Yeah. So here, like basically, the interface
05:41 22 and control does adapt to the number of lanes that are
05:41 23 available.

05:41 24 Q. Okay. Proceeding through that limitation,
05:41 25 does PCI Express -- or I think you've identified DMI as

05:41 1 another LVDS channel.

05:42 2 Are they capable of encoding and conveying
05:42 3 address and data bits of a PCI bus transaction in a
05:42 4 serial form?

05:42 5 A. Yeah. So here, we have the -- and I did,
05:42 6 like, a new keyword, encoded. Encoded has been -- this
05:42 7 word has been construed by the Court. And basically,
05:42 8 it will require like the address and data bits to be
05:42 9 converted from parallel to serial form.

05:42 10 Q. Does PCI Express do that?

05:42 11 A. Yes. [REDACTED]

05:42 12 [REDACTED]

05:42 13 [REDACTED]

05:42 14 Q. Uh-huh.

05:42 15 A. [REDACTED]

05:42 16 [REDACTED]

05:42 17 [REDACTED]

05:42 18 [REDACTED]

05:42 19 [REDACTED]

05:42 20 [REDACTED]

05:42 21 [REDACTED]

05:42 22 [REDACTED]

05:42 23 [REDACTED]

05:43 24 Q. Thank you, Dr. Sarhan.

05:43 25 Are the limitations of Row 5 met in this --

05:43 1 the manufacture of this accused desktop product?

05:43 2 A. Yes.

05:43 3 Q. Dr. Sarhan, has the manufacturer coupled an
05:43 4 integrated CPU and interface device in the manner
05:43 5 recited in this final row?

05:43 6 A. Yeah. So here, it says that coupling the
05:43 7 integrated CPU to a peripheral device attached to the
05:43 8 motherboard through that LVDS channel. And we see
05:43 9 here, we have --

05:43 10 (Clarification by Reporter.)

05:43 11 A. Okay. And here, we can see that the -- like
05:43 12 the storage, it has storage that's connected through
05:43 13 the PCI Express channels. And we have also additional
05:43 14 expansions so that you can have additional devices.

05:43 15 BY MR. COLLARD:

05:43 16 Q. Thank you.

05:43 17 Are all limitations of Claim 36 performed in
05:43 18 the manufacture of this accused desktop product?

05:43 19 A. Yes.

05:43 20 Q. All right. Let's move on, if you will, to
05:43 21 Claims 20 and 21 of the '654 patent.

05:43 22 Is there any reason to discuss this patent
05:44 23 individually at this point?

05:44 24 A. No.

05:44 25 Q. Okay. I'd like to take these claims together,

05:44 1 if I can, because of their interrelation.

05:44 2 THE COURT: Why don't you wrap up with
05:44 3 these claims?

05:44 4 MR. HALES: Sure. I've just got one
05:44 5 claim after that and then --

05:44 6 THE COURT: Thank you.

05:44 7 MR. HALES: -- the desktop is done. I'll
05:44 8 go fast.

05:44 9 THE COURT: No, no, no. I don't want you
10 to go fast. I just -- that's fine.

05:44 11 MR. HALES: Well, I'm going to do it
05:44 12 anyway if you won't get mad at me.

13 BY MR. HALES:

05:44 14 Q. Dr. Sarhan, has the data communication speed
05:44 15 of this computer been increased by following the steps
05:44 16 that are recited below?

05:44 17 A. Yes. And we'll see that as we go through
05:44 18 them.

05:44 19 Q. Has this product been provided with a CPU that
05:44 20 has a graphics controller on the printed circuit board?

05:44 21 A. Yes. The CPU data sheet shows that it has --
05:44 22 that specific computer has integrated the graphics.

05:44 23 Q. And is that what you've highlighted here?

05:44 24 A. Yeah. So this is -- here, it shows the --
05:44 25 like for different product lines, it shows that all of

05:44 1 them have graphics configuration, which means that they
05:45 2 include -- integrated the graphics.

05:45 3 Q. Thank you.

05:45 4 This third row, is there anything unique about
05:45 5 this row relative to the prior discussion we had of
05:45 6 LVDS channels?

05:45 7 A. No. So here, basically we have still like the
05:45 8 CPU, and we have these LVDS channels coming out of it,
05:45 9 as we discussed before.

05:45 10 Q. Okay. Has the manufacturer provided a
05:45 11 connector for the computer to connect to a console?

05:45 12 A. Sure. And we see here in these connectors --
05:45 13 the USB connectors that we see here.

05:45 14 Q. Has the manufacturer provided a second LVDS
05:45 15 channel that has been enabled to convey USB protocol
05:45 16 data in the manner recited in these last two rows of
05:45 17 Claim 20?

05:45 18 A. Yes. So here -- yeah.

05:45 19 So here, like we have the -- like basically
05:45 20 the LVDS channel, like, we have a second LVDS channel
05:45 21 to convey USB data. And this is met by the USB ports
05:45 22 in these products.

05:45 23 Q. Are all limitations of Claim 20 met in the
05:45 24 manufacture of this product?

05:45 25 A. Yes.

05:45 1 Q. Okay. Let's move on to Claim 21. This
05:45 2 recites conveying encoded address and data bits of a
05:45 3 PCI bus transaction and then more language.

05:46 4 I think we've discussed this encoded
05:46 5 limitation. I think you pointed to PCI Express and
05:46 6 DMI; is that right?

05:46 7 A. Yeah.

05:46 8 Q. Do you continue to do so for this claim
05:46 9 limitation?

05:46 10 A. Yes.

05:46 11 Q. We see a conveying step here.

05:46 12 Do you have any opinion about whether an act
05:46 13 of conveying the recited address and data bits occurs
05:46 14 during the manufacture of this product?

05:46 15 A. Yes. So the -- like, basically, I looked at
05:46 16 the deposition testimony of ASUS employees.
05:46 17 Unfortunately, they did not give, like, specific
05:46 18 answers and specific information about this.

05:46 19 But based on my own experience, like general
05:46 20 experience, like all -- like most electronic products
05:46 21 require testing. And I know like generally, computer
05:46 22 products undergo testing while -- during manufacturing.

05:46 23 Q. Why are you talking about testing, Dr. Sarhan?

05:46 24 A. Say it again.

05:46 25 Q. Why are you talking about testing?

05:46 1 A. Yeah. Because like when they are tested, then
05:47 2 like they will be running -- one of the ways that
05:47 3 computers can be tested is by basically turning on the
05:47 4 computer and running the operating system and the --
05:47 5 like -- which will do that enumeration, et cetera. And
05:47 6 this enumeration step will result in conveyance of PCI
05:47 7 data.

05:47 8 Q. So simply the act of turning on a computer
05:47 9 that had been manufactured --

05:47 10 A. Yeah. By running the operating system. Yeah.

05:47 11 Q. Will that result in the limitation that we see
05:47 12 here in Claim 21?

05:47 13 A. That's right.

05:47 14 Q. Okay. Do you know if this step is performed
05:47 15 during the manufacture of this product?

05:47 16 A. I didn't go to the manufacturing facility, but
05:47 17 I know, like, computers are very complicated products.
05:47 18 They have so many different units, interconnecting
05:47 19 units. They have hardware. They have software. A lot
05:47 20 of things that can actually go wrong.

05:47 21 So this is why generally manufacturers test
05:47 22 their products to make sure, like, you know, like, if
05:47 23 they ship them to customers and they have problems,
05:47 24 right, you know, then the customers would send them
05:47 25 back. It will impact their reputation. And they know

05:47 1 ASUS and their website, and then -- like, they say that
05:48 2 they test their products.

05:48 3 Q. Do you find it likely that this accused
05:48 4 desktop product was turned on and tested during the
05:48 5 course of its manufacture?

05:48 6 A. Yes.

05:48 7 Q. Okay. Are all limitations of Claims 20 and 21
05:48 8 met in the manufacture of this desktop product?

05:48 9 A. Yes.

05:48 10 Q. One more claim to go, Dr. Sarhan and our jury.
05:48 11 Before we jump into Claim 35, are there any
05:48 12 limitations in this claim related to conveying PCI
05:48 13 address and data bits or USB bits?

05:48 14 A. Okay. So here, like we -- like in previous
05:48 15 (indiscernible) we can see sometimes it says LVDS
05:48 16 channels used to convey USB data. Sometimes it's used
05:48 17 to convey PCI address and data bits.

05:48 18 So here in this -- in these cases, we don't
05:48 19 see any language like that. We don't see any PCI
05:48 20 anywhere. So it does not -- does not require -- convey
05:48 21 any PCI address or data bits.

05:48 22 Also, here, they don't even require
05:49 23 conveying -- conveyance of any USB data.

05:49 24 Q. Great.

05:49 25 Let's jump in.

05:49 1 Dr. Sarhan, has the performance of this
05:49 2 computer been improved by the manufacturing steps
05:49 3 recited below?

05:49 4 A. Yes. And as we'll see when we discuss it.

05:49 5 Q. Does this product have a CPU with an
05:49 6 integrated -- I'm sorry -- and a graphics controller on
05:49 7 a single chip?

05:49 8 A. That's right, as we discussed before.

05:49 9 Q. We've seen similar LVDS language before.
05:49 10 Has this -- has the manufacturer connected an
05:49 11 LVDS channel in the manner recited here?

05:49 12 A. Yes. So we have these two LVDS channels.

05:49 13 Q. Okay. Has the manufacturer connected a
05:49 14 differential signal channel to the CPU and graphics
05:49 15 controller to output video data? And if so, why?

05:49 16 A. Yeah. So here, differential signals channels,
05:49 17 we see here we have DVI, HDMI. Like, I'm sure like
05:49 18 most jury may be familiar with HDMI. DVI is an older
05:49 19 one that's used, like, to -- both of them are used for
05:49 20 videos, like, to connect that to the monitor.

05:49 21 And both of these employ differential
05:50 22 signaling.

05:50 23 Q. Okay.

05:50 24 A. And then I say here, like, it says
05:50 25 differential signal. It does not require, like, low

05:50 1 voltage or anything. But it just says differential
05:50 2 signal, which is more general than low voltage.

05:50 3 Q. Thank you for that.

05:50 4 Has the manufacturer provided a connector for
05:50 5 this computer to connect to external peripherals?

05:50 6 A. Yeah. And we see here all these connectors.

05:50 7 Q. Has the manufacturer provided a second LVDS
05:50 8 channel that conveys in the manner recited here?

05:50 9 A. Yeah. We already talk about the first LVDS
05:50 10 channel. Now here, like, as a second LVDS, those USB
05:50 11 ports will qualify as requiring an -- another LVDS
05:50 12 channel.

05:50 13 Q. Are all limitations of Claim 35 met in the
05:50 14 manufacture of this product?

05:50 15 A. Yes.

05:50 16 Q. Are all of the asserted claims met -- I'm
05:50 17 sorry.

05:50 18 Does this accused desktop product meet every
05:50 19 limitation of every asserted claim in this case?

05:50 20 A. Yes.

05:50 21 Q. Okay.

05:50 22 MR. HALES: It's probably a good breaking
05:50 23 point, Your Honor.

05:50 24 THE COURT: Very good.

05:50 25 Ladies and gentlemen of the jury, please

05:50 1 remember my instructions not to discuss the case when
05:50 2 you go home.

05:50 3 If you all will be here by about by 8:15
05:51 4 tomorrow, we'll get started around 8:30.

05:51 5 THE BAILIFF: All rise.

05:51 6 (Jury exited the courtroom.)

05:51 7 THE COURT: Thank you. You may be
05:51 8 seated.

05:51 9 Is there anything that we need to take
05:51 10 up?

05:51 11 MR. HALES: No, Your Honor.

05:51 12 MR. BURESH: No, Your Honor.

05:51 13 THE COURT: Okay.

14 (Hearing adjourned.)

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT)
2 WESTERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS)
3

4 I, Kristie M. Davis, Official Court Reporter for the
5 United States District Court, Western District of
6 Texas, do certify that the foregoing is a correct
7 transcript from the record of proceedings in the
8 above-entitled matter.

9 I certify that the transcript fees and format comply
10 with those prescribed by the Court and Judicial
11 Conference of the United States.

12 Certified to by me this 7th day of April 2022.

13
14 /s/ Kristie M. Davis
KRISTIE M. DAVIS
15 Official Court Reporter
800 Franklin Avenue
16 Waco, Texas 76701
(254) 340-6114
kmdaviscsr@yahoo.com
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25